



24-Bit A/D Flash MCU

BH66F5355

Revision: V1.30 Date: January 02, 2024

www.holtek.com

Table of Contents

Features	6
CPU Features	6
Peripheral Features.....	6
General Description	7
Block Diagram	8
Pin Assignment	9
Pin Description	10
Absolute Maximum Ratings	11
D.C. Characteristics	12
Operating Voltage Characteristics.....	12
Standby Current Characteristics	12
Operating Current Characteristics.....	13
A.C. Characteristics	13
Internal High Speed Oscillator – HIRC – Frequency Accuracy	13
Internal Low Speed Oscillator Characteristics – LIRC	14
Operating Frequency Characteristic Curves	14
System Start Up Time Characteristics	14
Input/Output Characteristics	15
Memory Electrical Characteristics	16
LVR/LVD Electrical Characteristics	16
24-bit Delta Sigma A/D Converter Electrical Characteristics	17
Effective Number of Bits – ENOB	20
I²C Electrical Characteristics	21
Power-on Reset Characteristics	22
System Architecture	22
Clocking and Pipelining.....	22
Program Counter.....	23
Stack	25
Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU	26
Flash Program Memory	26
Structure.....	26
Special Vectors	27
Look-up Table.....	27
Table Program Example	28
In Circuit Programming – ICP	28
On-Chip Debug Support – OCDS	29
In Application Programming – IAP	30
Data Memory	46
Structure.....	46

Data Memory Addressing	47
General Purpose Data Memory	47
Special Purpose Data Memory	47
Special Function Register Description	49
Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2	49
Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1L/MP1H, MP2L/MP2H	49
Accumulator – ACC	51
Program Counter Low Register – PCL	51
Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH	51
Status Register – STATUS	51
EEPROM Data Memory	53
EEPROM Data Memory Structure	53
EEPROM Registers	53
Read Operation from the EEPROM	55
Page Erase Operation to the EEPROM	56
Write Operation to the EEPROM	56
Write Protection	58
EEPROM Interrupt	58
Programming Considerations	58
Oscillators	61
Oscillator Overview	61
System Clock Configurations	62
Internal High Speed RC Oscillator – HIRC	62
Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC	62
Operating Modes and System Clocks	63
System Clocks	63
System Operation Modes	63
Control Registers	65
Operating Mode Switching	66
Standby Current Considerations	69
Wake-up	70
Watchdog Timer	70
Watchdog Timer Clock Source	70
Watchdog Timer Control Register	70
Watchdog Timer Operation	72
Reset and Initialisation	73
Reset Functions	73
Reset Initial Conditions	76
Input/Output Ports	80
Pull-high Resistors	80
Port A Wake-up	81
I/O Port Control Register	81
I/O Port Source Current Control	81

Pin-shared Functions	82
I/O Pin Structures.....	84
READ PORT Function.....	85
Programming Considerations.....	86
Timer Modules – TM	87
Introduction	87
TM Operation	87
TM Clock Source.....	87
TM Interrupts.....	88
TM External Pins.....	88
Programming Considerations.....	89
Compact Type TM – CTM	90
Compact Type TM Operation	90
Compact Type TM Register Description.....	90
Compact Type TM Operation Modes	95
Periodic Type TM – PTM.....	101
Periodic TM Operation	101
Periodic Type TM Register Description.....	101
Periodic Type TM Operation Modes.....	106
Analog to Digital Converter	115
A/D Converter Overview	115
Internal Power Supply.....	115
A/D Converter Data Rate Definition	117
A/D Converter Register Description.....	118
A/D Converter Data Registers – ADRL, ADRM, ADRH.....	122
A/D Converter Operation.....	124
Summary of A/D Conversion Steps.....	125
Programming Considerations.....	126
A/D Converter Transfer Function	126
A/D Converted Data.....	127
A/D Converted Data to Voltage.....	127
Temperature Sensor.....	127
Serial Interface Module – SIM	128
SPI Interface	128
I ² C Interface	136
UART Interface.....	144
UART External Pins	145
UART Single Wire Mode.....	146
UART Data Transfer Scheme.....	146
UART Status and Control Registers.....	146
Baud Rate Generator.....	153
UART Setup and Control.....	155
UART Transmitter.....	156
UART Receiver	157

Managing Receiver Errors	159
UART Interrupt Structure.....	160
UART Power Down and Wake-up.....	161
Cyclic Redundancy Check – CRC	162
CRC Registers	162
CRC Operation.....	163
Low Voltage Detector – LVD	165
LVD Register	165
LVD Operation.....	166
Interrupts	166
Interrupt Registers.....	166
Interrupt Operation	170
External Interrupts.....	171
A/D Converter Interrupt	172
Multi-function Interrupts.....	172
TM Interrupts	172
LVD Interrupt	173
EEPROM Interrupt	173
Time Base Interrupts	173
Serial Interface Module Interrupt.....	175
UART Interrupt	175
Interrupt Wake-up Function.....	175
Programming Considerations.....	175
Configuration Options.....	176
Application Circuits.....	177
Instruction Set.....	178
Introduction	178
Instruction Timing	178
Moving and Transferring Data.....	178
Arithmetic Operations.....	178
Logical and Rotate Operation	179
Branches and Control Transfer	179
Bit Operations	179
Table Read Operations	179
Other Operations.....	179
Instruction Set Summary	180
Table Conventions.....	180
Extended Instruction Set.....	182
Instruction Definition.....	184
Extended Instruction Definition	193
Package Information	200
24-pin SSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions	201
SAW Type 24-pin QFN (3mm×3mm×0.55mm) Outline Dimensions	202

Features

CPU Features

- Operating voltage
 - ♦ $f_{SYS}=4\text{MHz}$: 2.2V~5.5V
 - ♦ $f_{SYS}=8\text{MHz}$: 2.2V~5.5V
 - ♦ $f_{SYS}=12\text{MHz}$: 2.7V~5.5V
- Up to 0.33 μs instruction cycle with 12MHz system clock
- Power down and wake-up functions to reduce power consumption
- Oscillator types
 - ♦ Internal High Speed 4/8/12MHz RC – HIRC
 - ♦ Internal Low Speed 32kHz RC – LIRC
- Multi-mode operation: FAST, SLOW, IDLE and SLEEP
- Fully integrated internal oscillators require no external components
- All instructions executed in 1~3 instruction cycles
- Table read instructions
- 115 powerful instructions
- 8-level subroutine nesting
- Bit manipulation instruction

Peripheral Features

- Flash Program Memory: 8K \times 16
- Data Memory: 512 \times 8
- True EEPROM Memory: 512 \times 8
- Watchdog Timer function
- 10 bidirectional I/O lines
- Two external interrupt lines shared with I/O pins
- Multiple Timer Modules for time measure, input capture, compare match output, PWM output function or single pulse output function
- Serial Interface Module – SIM includes SPI and I²C interfaces
- Fully-duplex/Half-duplex Universal Asynchronous Receiver and Transmitter Interface – UART
- Dual Time-Base functions for generation of fixed time interrupt signals
- 9 differential or 18 single-end channel 24-bit resolution Delta Sigma A/D converter
- Low voltage reset function
- Low voltage detect function
- Package types: 24-pin SSOP, 24-pin QFN

General Description

The device is a Flash Memory A/D type 8-bit high performance RISC architecture microcontroller which includes a multi-channel 24-bit Delta Sigma A/D converter with Accurate Temperature Sensor, specifically designed for high accuracy measurement products and temperature measurement products.

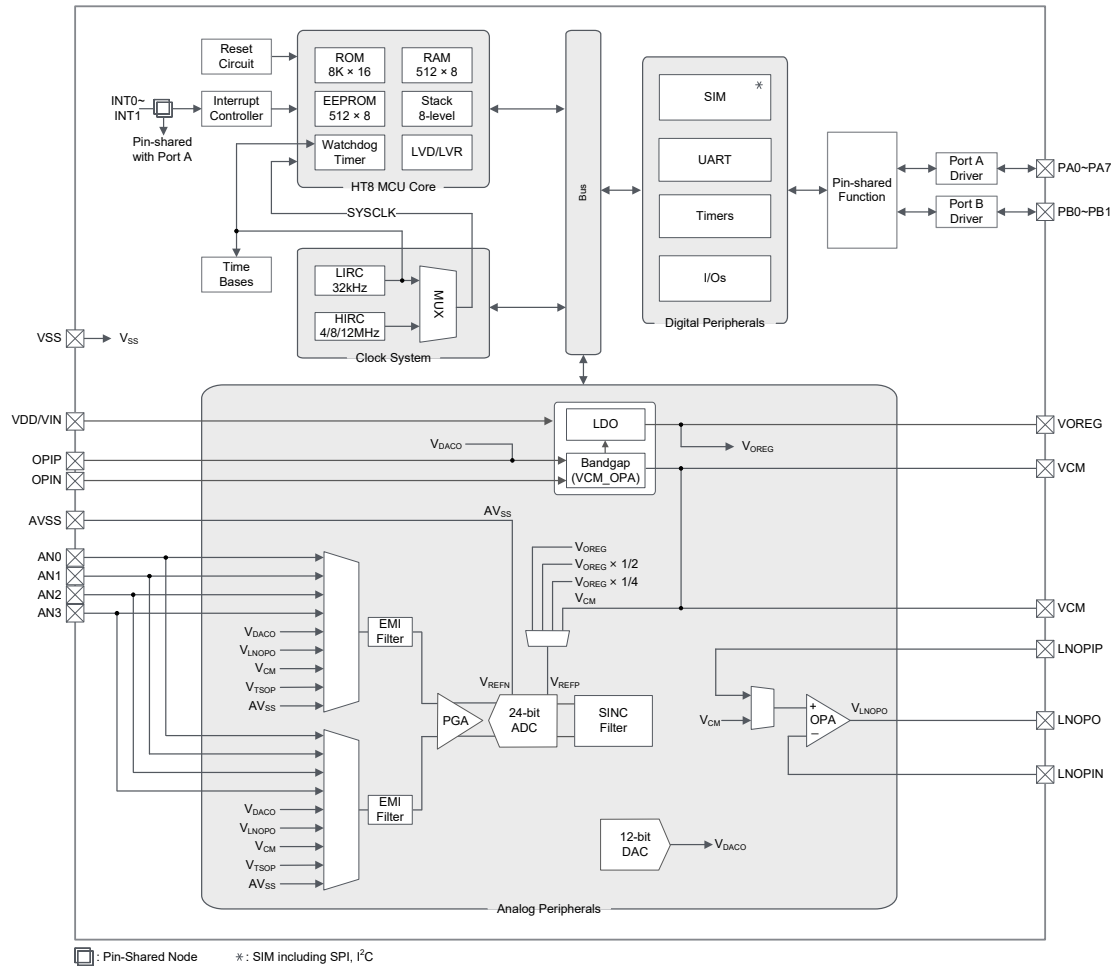
For memory features, the Flash Memory offers users the convenience of multi-programming features. Other memory includes an area of RAM Data Memory as well as an area of true EEPROM memory for storage of non-volatile data such as serial numbers, calibration data etc.

Analog features include a multi-channel 24-bit Delta Sigma A/D Converter and Operational Amplifier functions. Multiple and extremely flexible Timer Modules provide timing, pulse generation and PWM generation functions. Communication with the outside world is catered for by including fully integrated SPI, I²C and UART interface functions, three popular interfaces which provide designers with a means of easy communication with external peripheral hardware. Protective features such as an internal Watchdog Timer, Low Voltage Reset and Low Voltage Detector coupled with excellent noise immunity and ESD protection ensure that reliable operation is maintained in hostile electrical environments.

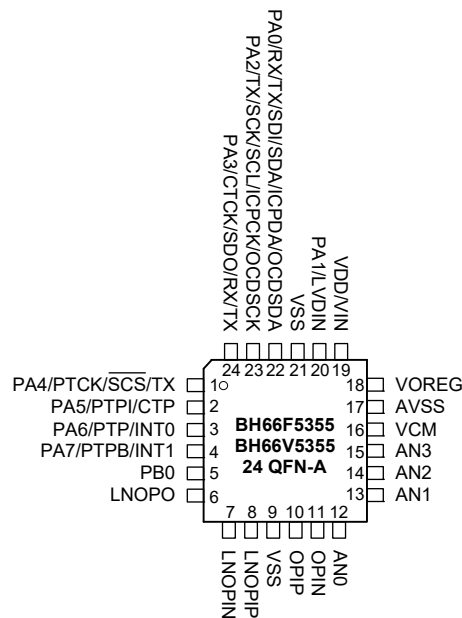
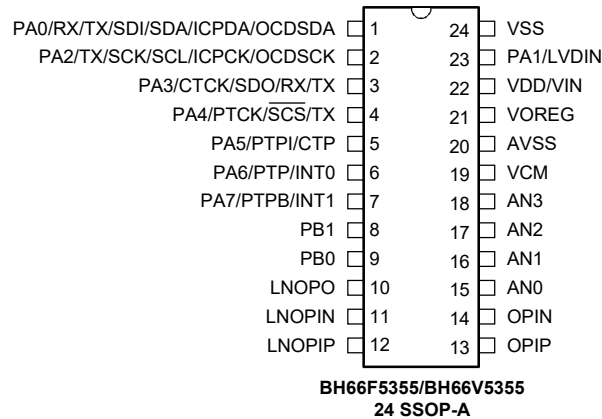
The device also includes fully integrated high and low oscillators which require no external components for their implementation. The ability to operate and switch dynamically between a range of operating modes using different clock sources gives users the ability to optimise microcontroller operation and minimise power consumption.

The inclusion of flexible I/O programming features, Time-Base functions along with many other features enhance the versatility of the device to suit for high accuracy measurement products such as electronic scales, blood pressure meters and so on, as well as appropriate for use in ear thermometers, forehead thermometers, electronic thermometers and other temperature measurement products.

Block Diagram



Pin Assignment



- Note: 1. If the pin-shared pin functions have multiple outputs, the desired pin-shared function is determined by the corresponding software control bits.
2. The OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins are used as the OCDS dedicated pins and only available for the BH66V5355 device which is the OCDS EV chip of the BH66F5355.
3. For less pin-count package types there will be unbonded pins which should be properly configured to avoid unwanted current consumption resulting from floating input conditions. Refer to the “Standby Current Considerations” and “Input/Output Ports” sections.

Pin Description

The function of each pin is listed in the following table, however the details behind how each pin is configured is contained in other sections of the datasheet. As the Pin Description table shows the situation for the package with the most pins, not all pins in the table will be available on smaller package sizes.

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA0/RX/TX/SDI/SDA/ICPDA/OCDSDA	PA0	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	RX/TX	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	UART serial data input in full-duplex communication or UART serial data input / output in Single Wire Mode communication
	SDI	PAS0	ST	—	SIM SPI data input
	SDA	PAS0	ST	NMOS	SIM I ² C data line
	ICPDA	—	ST	CMOS	ICP data/address pin
	OCDSDA	—	ST	CMOS	OCDS data/address pin, for EV chip only
PA1/LVDIN	PA1	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	LVDIN	PAS0	AN	—	LVD external input
PA2/TX/SCK/SCL/ICPCK/OCDSCK	PA2	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	TX	PAS0	—	CMOS	UART serial data output
	SCK	PAS0	ST	CMOS	SIM SPI serial clock
	SCL	PAS0	ST	NMOS	SIM I ² C clock line
	ICPCK	—	ST	—	ICP clock pin
	OCDSCK	—	ST	—	OCDS clock pin, for EV chip only
PA3/CTCK/SDO/RX/TX	PA3	PAPU PAWU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	CTCK	PAS0	ST	—	CTM clock input
	SDO	PAS0	—	CMOS	SIM SPI data output
	RX/TX	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	UART serial data input in full-duplex communication or UART serial data input / output in Single Wire Mode communication
PA4/PTCK/ \overline{SCS} /TX	PA4	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	PTCK	PAS1	ST	—	PTM clock input
	\overline{SCS}	PAS1	ST	CMOS	SIM SPI slave select
	TX	PAS1	—	CMOS	UART serial data output
PA5/PTPI/CTP	PA5	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	PTPI	PAS1	ST	—	PTM capture input
	CTP	PAS1	—	CMOS	CTM output

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA6/PTP/INT0	PA6	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	PTP	PAS1	—	CMOS	PTM output
	INT0	PAS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 0 input
PA7/PTPB/INT1	PA7	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up
	PTPB	PAS1	—	CMOS	PTM inverted output
	INT1	PAS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 1 input
PB0~PB1	PB0~PB1	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up
VOREG	VOREG	—	—	AN	LDO output pin
		—	AN	—	Positive power supply for A/D Converter and PGA
AN0~AN3	AN0~AN3	—	AN	—	A/D Converter external input channel
VCM	VCM	—	—	AN	A/D Converter common mode voltage output and VCM_OPA output
OPIP	OPIP	—	AN	—	VCM_OPA positive input
OPIN	OPIN	—	AN	—	VCM_OPA negative input
LNOPO	LNOPO	—	—	AN	Low noise OPA output
LNOPIN	LNOPIN	—	AN	—	Low noise OPA negative input
LNOPIP	LNOPIP	—	AN	—	Low noise OPA positive input
VDD/VIN	VDD	—	PWR	—	Positive power supply
	VIN	—	PWR	—	LDO input pin
AVSS	AVSS	—	PWR	—	Negative power supply for A/D Converter and PGA
VSS	VSS	—	PWR	—	Negative power supply

Legend: I/T: Input type;

OPT: Optional by register option;

ST: Schmitt Trigger input;

NMOS: NMOS output;

O/T: Output type;

PWR: Power;

CMOS: CMOS output;

AN: Analog signal.

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Supply Voltage	$V_{SS}-0.3V$ to $6.0V$
Input Voltage	$V_{SS}-0.3V$ to $V_{DD}+0.3V$
Storage Temperature.....	$-60^{\circ}C$ to $150^{\circ}C$
Operating Temperature.....	$-40^{\circ}C$ to $85^{\circ}C$
I_{OH} Total	$-80mA$
I_{OL} Total	$80mA$
Total Power Dissipation	$500mW$

Note: These are stress ratings only. Stresses exceeding the range specified under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause substantial damage to the device. Functional operation of the device at other conditions beyond those listed in the specification is not implied and prolonged exposure to extreme conditions may affect device reliability.

D.C. Characteristics

For data in the following tables, note that factors such as oscillator type, operating voltage, operating frequency, pin load conditions, temperature and program instruction type, etc., can all exert an influence on the measured values.

Operating Voltage Characteristics

 $T_a = -40^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 85^{\circ}\text{C}$

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
V_{DD}	Operating Voltage – HIRC	$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}=4\text{MHz}$	2.2	—	5.5	V
		$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}=8\text{MHz}$	2.2	—	5.5	
		$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}=12\text{MHz}$	2.7	—	5.5	
	Operating Voltage – LIRC	$f_{SYS}=f_{LIRC}=32\text{kHz}$	2.2	—	5.5	V

Standby Current Characteristics

 $T_a = 25^{\circ}\text{C}$, unless otherwise specified

Symbol	Standby Mode	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Max. @85°C	Unit	
		V_{DD}	Conditions						
I_{STB}	SLEEP Mode	2.2V	WDT off	—	0.45	0.80	7.00	μA	
		3V		—	0.45	0.90	8.00		
		5V		—	0.5	2.0	10.0		
		2.2V		WDT on	—	1.2	2.4		2.9
		3V			—	1.5	3.0		3.6
		5V			—	3	5		6
	IDLE0 Mode – LIRC	2.2V	f_{SUB} on	—	2.4	4.0	4.8	μA	
		3V		—	3	5	6		
		5V		—	5	10	12		
	IDLE1 Mode – HIRC	2.2V	f_{SUB} on, $f_{SYS}=4\text{MHz}$	—	144	200	240	μA	
		3V		—	180	250	300		
		5V		—	400	600	720		
		2.2V	f_{SUB} on, $f_{SYS}=8\text{MHz}$	—	288	400	480	μA	
		3V		—	360	500	600		
		5V		—	600	800	960		
		2.7V	f_{SUB} on, $f_{SYS}=12\text{MHz}$	—	432	600	720	μA	
		3V		—	540	750	900		
		5V		—	800	1200	1440		

Note: When using the characteristic table data, the following notes should be taken into consideration:

1. Any digital inputs are setup in a non floating condition.
2. All measurements are taken under conditions of no load and with all peripherals in an off state.
3. There are no DC current paths.
4. All Standby Current values are taken after a HALT instruction execution thus stopping all instruction execution.

Operating Current Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Operating Mode	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit	
		V _{DD}	Conditions					
I _{DD}	SLOW Mode – LIRC	2.2V	f _{sys} =32kHz	—	8	16	μA	
		3V		—	10	20		
		5V		—	30	50		
	FAST Mode – HIRC	2.2V	f _{sys} =4MHz	—	0.3	0.5	mA	
				3V	—	0.4		0.6
				5V	—	0.8		1.2
		2.2V	f _{sys} =8MHz	—	0.6	1.0	mA	
				3V	—	0.8		1.2
				5V	—	1.6		2.4
		2.7V	f _{sys} =12MHz	—	1.0	1.4	mA	
				3V	—	1.2		1.8
				5V	—	2.4		3.6

Note: When using the characteristic table data, the following notes should be taken into consideration:

1. Any digital inputs are setup in a non floating condition.
2. All measurements are taken under conditions of no load and with all peripherals in an off state.
3. There are no DC current paths.
4. All Operating Current values are measured using a continuous NOP instruction program loop.

A.C. Characteristics

For data in the following tables, note that factors such as oscillator type, operating voltage, operating frequency and temperature etc., can all exert an influence on the measured values.

Internal High Speed Oscillator – HIRC – Frequency Accuracy

During the program writing operation the writer will trim the HIRC oscillator at a user selected HIRC frequency and user selected voltage of either 3V or 5V.

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Temp.				
f _{HIRC}	4MHz Writer Trimmed HIRC Frequency	3V/5V	25°C	-1%	4	+1%	MHz
			-40°C~85°C	-2%	4	+2%	
		2.5V~5.5V	25°C	-2.5%	4	+2.5%	
			-40°C~85°C	-3%	4	+3%	
	8MHz Writer Trimmed HIRC Frequency	3V/5V	25°C	-1%	8	+1%	MHz
			-40°C~85°C	-2%	8	+2%	
		2.2V~5.5V	25°C	-2.5%	8	+2.5%	
			-40°C~85°C	-3%	8	+3%	
	12MHz Writer Trimmed HIRC Frequency	5V	25°C	-1%	12	+1%	MHz
			-40°C~85°C	-2%	12	+2%	
		2.7V~5.5V	25°C	-2.5%	12	+2.5%	
			-40°C~85°C	-3%	12	+3%	

Note: 1. The 3V/5V values for V_{DD} are provided as these are the two selectable fixed voltages at which the HIRC frequency is trimmed by the writer.

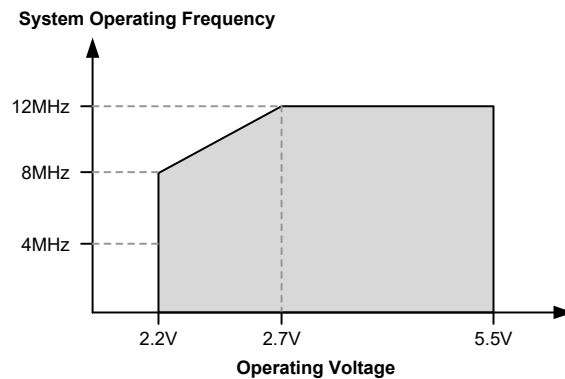
2. The row below the 3V/5V trim voltage row is provided to show the values for the full V_{DD} range operating voltage. It is recommended that the trim voltage is fixed at 3V for application voltage ranges from 2.2V to 3.6V and fixed at 5V for application voltage ranges from 3.3V to 5.5V.

- The minimum and maximum tolerance values provided in the table are only for the frequency at which the writer trims the HIRC oscillator. After trimming at this chosen specific frequency any change in HIRC oscillator frequency using the oscillator register control bits by the application program will give a frequency tolerance to within $\pm 20\%$.

Internal Low Speed Oscillator Characteristics – LIRC

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Temp.				
f _{LIRC}	LIRC Frequency	3V	25°C	-2%	32	+2%	kHz
		2.2V~5.5V	-40°C~85°C	-7%	32	+7%	
t _{START}	LIRC Start up Time	—	-40°C~85°C	—	—	100	μs

Operating Frequency Characteristic Curves



System Start Up Time Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
t _{SST}	System Start-up Time Wake-up from condition where f _{sys} is off	—	f _{sys} =f _H ~f _H /64, f _H =f _{HIRC}	—	16	—	t _{HIRC}
		—	f _{sys} =f _{SUB} =f _{LIRC}	—	2	—	t _{LIRC}
	System Start-up Time Wake-up from condition where f _{sys} is on	—	f _{sys} =f _H ~f _H /64, f _H =f _{HIRC}	—	2	—	t _H
		—	f _{sys} =f _{SUB} =f _{LIRC}	—	2	—	t _{SUB}
t _{RSTD}	System Speed Switch Time FAST to SLOW Mode or SLOW to FAST Mode	—	f _{HIRC} switches from off → on	—	16	—	t _{HIRC}
	System Reset Delay Time Reset source from Power-on reset or LVR hardware reset	—	RR _{POR} =5V/ms	14	16	18	ms
	System Reset Delay Time LVRC/WDTC/RSTC software reset	—	—	14	16	18	ms
t _{SRESET}	System Reset Delay Time Reset source from WDT overflow	—	—	14	16	18	ms
t _{SRESET}	Minimum Software Reset Width to Reset	—	—	45	90	120	μs

- Note: 1. For the System Start-up time values, whether f_{sys} is on or off depends upon the mode type and the chosen f_{sys} system oscillator. Details are provided in the System Operating Modes section.
- The time units, shown by the symbols t_{HIRC}, t_{sys} etc. are the inverse of the corresponding frequency values as provided in the frequency tables. For example, t_{HIRC}=1/f_{HIRC}, t_{sys}=1/f_{sys} etc.
 - If the LIRC is used as the system clock and if it is off when in the SLEEP Mode, then an additional LIRC start up time, t_{START}, as provided in the LIRC frequency table, must be added to the t_{SST} time in the table above.
 - The System Speed Switch Time is effectively the time taken for the newly activated oscillator to start up.

Input/Output Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{IL}	Input Low Voltage for I/O Ports	5V	—	0	—	1.5	V
		—	—	0	—	0.2V _{DD}	V
V _{IH}	Input High Voltage for I/O Ports	5V	—	3.5	—	5	V
		—	—	0.8V _{DD}	—	V _{DD}	V
I _{OL}	Sink Current for I/O Ports	3V	V _{OL} =0.1V _{DD}	16	32	—	mA
		5V		32	65	—	mA
I _{OH}	Source Current for I/O Ports	3V	V _{OH} =0.9V _{DD} , SLEDC[m+1:m]=00B (m=0, 2, 4)	-0.7	-1.5	—	mA
		5V		-1.5	-2.9	—	mA
		3V	V _{OH} =0.9V _{DD} , SLEDC[m+1:m]=01B (m=0, 2, 4)	-1.3	-2.5	—	mA
		5V		-2.5	-5.1	—	mA
		3V	V _{OH} =0.9V _{DD} , SLEDC[m+1:m]=10B (m=0, 2, 4)	-1.8	-3.6	—	mA
		5V		-3.6	-7.3	—	mA
		3V	V _{OH} =0.9V _{DD} , SLEDC[m+1:m]=11B (m=0, 2, 4)	-4	-8	—	mA
		5V		-8	-16	—	mA
R _{PH}	Pull-high Resistance for I/O Ports ⁽¹⁾	3V	—	20	60	100	kΩ
		5V		10	30	50	
I _{LEAK}	Input Leakage Current	5V	V _{IN} =V _{DD} or V _{IN} =V _{SS}	—	—	±1	μA
t _{INT}	External Interrupt Input Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	10	—	—	μs
t _{TCK}	TM Clock Input Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	0.3	—	—	μs
t _{TPI}	TM Capture Input Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	0.3	—	—	μs
f _{TMCLK}	TM Maximum Timer Clock Source Frequency	5V	—	—	—	1	f _{sys}
t _{CPW}	TM Minimum Capture Pulse Width	—	—	t _{CPW} ⁽²⁾	—	—	μs

Note: 1. The R_{PH} internal pull-high resistance value is calculated by connecting to ground and enabling the input pin with a pull-high resistor and then measuring the pin current at the specified supply voltage level. Dividing the voltage by this measured current provides the R_{PH} value.

2. If PTnCAPTS=0, then t_{CPW}=max(2×t_{TMCLK}, t_{TPI}).

If PTnCAPTS=1, then t_{CPW}=max(2×t_{TMCLK}, t_{TCK}).

Ex1: If PTnCAPTS=0, f_{TMCLK}=16MHz, t_{TPI}=0.3μs, then t_{CPW}=max(0.125μs, 0.3μs)=0.3μs.

Ex2: If PTnCAPTS=1, f_{TMCLK}=16MHz, t_{TCK}=0.3μs, then t_{CPW}=max(0.125μs, 0.3μs)=0.3μs.

Ex3: If PTnCAPTS=0, f_{TMCLK}=8MHz, t_{TPI}=0.3μs, then t_{CPW}=max(0.25μs, 0.3μs)=0.3μs.

Ex4: If PTnCAPTS=0, f_{TMCLK}=4MHz, t_{TPI}=0.3μs, then t_{CPW}=max(0.5μs, 0.3μs)=0.5μs.

Where t_{TMCLK}=1/f_{TMCLK}.

Memory Electrical Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C, unless otherwise specified

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{DD}	V _{DD} for Read / Write	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
Flash Program Memory							
t _{FWR}	Write Time	—	FWERTS=0	—	2.2	2.7	ms
		—	FWERTS=1	—	3.0	3.6	
t _{FER}	Erase Time	—	FWERTS=0	—	3.2	3.9	ms
		—	FWERTS=1	—	3.7	4.5	
E _P	Cell Endurance	—	—	100K	—	—	E/W
t _{RETD}	Data Retention Time	—	Ta=25°C	—	40	—	Year
t _{ACTV}	ROM Activation Time – Wake-up from Power Down Mode	—	—	32	—	64	μs
Data EEPROM Memory							
t _{EErd}	Read Time	—	—	—	—	4	t _{sys}
t _{EEWR}	Write Time (Byte Mode)	—	EWERTS=0	—	5.4	6.6	ms
		—	EWERTS=1	—	6.7	8.1	
	Write Time (Page Mode)	—	EWERTS=0	—	2.2	2.7	
		—	EWERTS=1	—	3.0	3.6	
t _{EEER}	Erase Time	—	EWERTS=0	—	3.2	3.9	ms
		—	EWERTS=1	—	3.7	4.5	
E _P	Cell Endurance	—	—	100K	—	—	E/W
t _{RETD}	Data Retention Time	—	Ta=25°C	—	40	—	Year
RAM Data Memory							
V _{DR}	RAM Data Retention Voltage	—	—	1.0	—	—	V

Note: 1. The ROM activation time t_{ACTV} should be added when calculating the total system start-up time of a wake-up from the power down mode.

2. “E/W” means Erase/Write times.

LVR/LVD Electrical Characteristics

Ta=-40°C~85°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{DD}	Operating Voltage	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
V _{LVR}	Low Voltage Reset Voltage	—	LVR enable, voltage select 2.1V	-5%	2.1	+5%	V
		—	LVR enable, voltage select 2.55V		2.55		
		—	LVR enable, voltage select 3.15V		3.15		
		—	LVR enable, voltage select 3.8V		3.8		
V _{LVD}	Low Voltage Detection Voltage	—	LVD enable, voltage select LVDIN pin=1.23V	-10%	1.23	+10%	V
		—	LVD enable, voltage select 2.2V	-5%	2.2	+5%	
		—	LVD enable, voltage select 2.4V		2.4		
		—	LVD enable, voltage select 2.7V		2.7		
		—	LVD enable, voltage select 3.0V		3.0		
		—	LVD enable, voltage select 3.3V		3.3		
		—	LVD enable, voltage select 3.6V		3.6		
		—	LVD enable, voltage select 4.0V		4.0		

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
I _{LVR} L _{VDBG}	Operating Current	3V	LVD enable, LVR enable, VBGEN=0	—	—	18	μA
		5V	VBGEN=0	—	20	25	
		3V	LVD enable, LVR enable, VBGEN=1	—	—	150	
		5V	VBGEN=1	—	180	200	
t _{L_VD_S}	LVDO Stable Time	—	For LVR enable, VBGEN=0, LVD off → on	—	—	18	μs
t _{L_VR}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Reset	—	TLVR[1:0]=00B	120	240	480	μs
			TLVR[1:0]=01B	0.5	1.0	2.0	ms
			TLVR[1:0]=10B	1	2	4	
			TLVR[1:0]=11B	2	4	8	
t _{L_VD}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Interrupt	—	—	60	120	240	μs

Note: If V_{LVD}=1.23V, it is used to detect the LVDIN pin input voltage. Other V_{LVD} choices are used to detect the power supply V_{DD}.

24-bit Delta Sigma A/D Converter Electrical Characteristics

V_{DD}=V_{IN}, Ta=25°C, unless otherwise specified
LDO & VCM Test conditions: MCU enters SLEEP mode, other functions disabled

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
LDO							
V _{IN}	Supply Voltage for LDO and Bandgap	—	—	2.6	—	5.5	V
I _Q	LDO Quiescent Current	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V _{IN} =3.6V, no load	—	35	50	μA
I _{BGP}	Bandgap Quiescent Current	—	BGPEN=1, V _{IN} =3.6V, no load	—	150	200	μA
V _{OUT_LDO}	LDO Output Voltage	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =0.1mA	-5%	2.4	+5%	V
			LDOVS[1:0]=01B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =0.1mA		2.6		
			LDOVS[1:0]=10B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =0.1mA		2.9		
			LDOVS[1:0]=11B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =0.1mA		3.3		
ΔV _{LOAD}	LDO Load Regulation ⁽¹⁾	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V _{IN} =V _{OUT_LDO} +0.2V, 0mA≤I _{LOAD} ≤10mA	—	0.105	0.210	%/mA
V _{DROP_LDO}	LDO Dropout Voltage ⁽²⁾	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =10mA, ΔV _{OUT_LDO} =2%	—	—	220	mV
			LDOVS[1:0]=01B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =10mA, ΔV _{OUT_LDO} =2%	—	—	200	mV
			LDOVS[1:0]=10B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =10mA, ΔV _{OUT_LDO} =2%	—	—	180	mV
			LDOVS[1:0]=11B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =10mA, ΔV _{OUT_LDO} =2%	—	—	160	mV
TC _{LDO}	LDO Temperature Coefficient	—	Ta=-40°C~85°C, LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V _{IN} =3.6V, I _{LOAD} =100μA	—	—	200	ppm/°C
ΔV _{LINE_LDO}	LDO Line Regulation	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, 2.6V≤V _{IN} ≤5.5V, I _{LOAD} =100μA	—	—	0.7	%/V
			LDOVS[1:0]=00B, 2.6V≤V _{IN} ≤3.6V, I _{LOAD} =100μA	—	—	0.2	%/V

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
VCM_OPA							
V _{VCMOPA}	Supply Voltage for VCM_OPA	—	—	2.6	—	5.5	V
V _{OUT_VCM}	VCM Output Voltage (VCM Pin)	—	V _{IN} =3.6V, no load (Voltage Follower configuration)	-5%	1.25	+5%	V
TC _{VCM}	VCM Temperature Coefficient	—	T _a =-40°C~85°C, V _{IN} =3.6V, no load (Voltage Follower configuration)	—	—	200	ppm/°C
ΔV _{LINE_VCM}	VCM Line Regulation	—	2.6V≤V _{IN} ≤3.6V, no load (Voltage Follower configuration)	—	—	0.3	%/V
t _{VCMS}	VCM Turn On Stable Time	—	V _{IN} =3.6V, no load (Voltage Follower configuration)	—	—	10	ms
I _{OH}	Source Current for VCM Output Pin	—	V _{IN} =3.6V, ΔV _{OUT_VCM} =-2% (Voltage Follower configuration)	-2	—	—	mA
I _{OL}	Sink Current for VCM Output Pin	—	V _{IN} =3.6V, ΔV _{OUT_VCM} =+2% (Voltage Follower configuration)	2	—	—	mA
I _{OPA}	Additional Current for OPA Enable	—	No load	—	500	750	μA
V _{OS}	Input Offset Voltage	—	—	-15	—	+15	mV
I _{OS}	Input Offset Current	—	—	—	1	—	pA
V _{CM_OPA}	Common Mode Voltage Range	—	—	V _{SS} +0.3	—	V _{IN} -1.4	V
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	—	—	50	80	—	dB
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	—	—	50	80	—	dB
A/D Converter & A/D Converter Internal Reference Voltage (Delta Sigma A/D Converter)							
V _{OREG}	Supply Voltage for A/D Converter, PGA	—	LDOEN=0	2.4	—	3.3	V
		—	LDOEN=1	2.4	—	3.3	V
I _{ADC}	Additional Current for A/D Converter Enable	—	—	—	500	650	μA
I _{ADSTB}	Standby Current	—	MCU enters SLEEP mode, no load	—	—	1	μA
N _R	Resolution	—	—	—	—	24	Bit
INL	Integral Non-linearity	—	V _{OREG} =3.3V, V _{REF} =1.25V, ΔSI=±450mV, PGA gain=1	—	±50	—	ppm
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	—	PGA gain=128, ΔV=0.1V	—	146	—	dB
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	5V	PGA gain=128, ΔV=0.1V	—	101	—	dB
I _{BIAS}	Input Bias Current	—	—	—	1.8	—	nA
NFB	Noise Free Bits	—	f _{MCLK} =4MHz, FLMS[1:0]=00B, V _{OREG} =3.3V, V _{REF} =1.25V, PGA gain=128, OSR=16384	—	16	—	Bit
ENOB	Effective Number of Bits	—	f _{MCLK} =4MHz, FLMS[1:0]=00B, V _{OREG} =3.3V, V _{REF} =1.25V, PGA gain=128, OSR=16384	—	18.7	—	Bit
f _{ADCK}	A/D Converter Clock Frequency	—	—	40	409.6	440	kHz
f _{ADO}	A/D Converter Output Data Rate	—	f _{MCLK} =4MHz, FLMS[1:0]=00B, SINCS=0	4	—	1042	Hz
		—	f _{MCLK} =4MHz, FLMS[1:0]=10B, SINCS=0	10	—	2604	Hz
V _{REFP}	Reference Input Voltage	—	—	V _{REFN} +0.8	—	V _{OREG}	V
V _{REFN}		—	—	0	—	V _{REFP} -0.8	V
V _{REF}		—	V _{REF} =V _{REFP} -V _{REFN}	0.80	—	1.75	V

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
PGA							
V _{CM_PGA}	Common Mode Voltage Range	—	—	0.4	—	V _{OREG} -0.95	V
ΔD _i	Differential Input Voltage Range	—	Gain=PGAGN×ADGN	-V _{REF} /Gain	—	+V _{REF} /Gain	V
Temperature Sensor							
TC _{TS}	Temperature Sensor Temperature Coefficient	—	T _a =-40°C~85°C	130	175	—	μV/ °C
I _{TS}	Additional Current for Temperature Sensor Enable	—	—	—	5	10	μA
T _{ACC}	Temperature Accuracy ⁽⁴⁾ (Linearity Error)	—	T _a =-10°C~50°C	—	±0.2	—	°C
LNOPA							
V _{OREG}	Supply Voltage for LNOPA	—	LDOEN=0	2.4	—	3.3	V
			LDOEN=1	2.4	—	3.3	
I _{OPA}	Additional Current for OPA Enable	—	No load	—	250	400	μA
V _{OS}	Input Offset Voltage	—	—	-2	—	+2	mV
V _{CM_OPA}	Common Mode Voltage Range	—	—	V _{SS} +0.15	—	V _{OREG} -1.4	V
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	—	—	55	90	—	dB
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	—	—	55	90	—	dB
12-Bit DAC							
V _{DD}	Operating Voltage	—	—	2.4	—	5.5	V
V _{DACO}	Output Voltage Range	—	—	V _{SS}	—	V _{REF}	V
V _{REF}	Reference Voltage	—	—	V _{OREG}	—	V _{DD}	V
I _{DAC}	Additional Current for DAC Enable	—	V _{REF} =5V	—	—	610	μA
DNL	Differential Non-linearity	—	2.4V≤V _{DD} ≤5.5V	—	—	±6	LSB
INL	Integral Non-linearity	—	2.4V≤V _{DD} ≤5.5V	—	—	±12	LSB
R _o	R2R Output Resistor	3V	—	—	13.3	—	kΩ

- Note: 1. Load regulation is measured at a constant junction temperature, using pulse testing with a low ON time and is guaranteed up to the maximum power dissipation. Power dissipation is determined by the input/output differential voltage and the output current. Guaranteed maximum power dissipation will not be available over the full input/output range. The maximum allowable power dissipation at any ambient temperature is $P_D=(T_{J(MAX)}-T_a)/\theta_{JA}$.
2. Dropout voltage is defined as the input voltage minus the output voltage that produces a 2% change in the output voltage from the value at appointed V_{IN}.
3. The VCM cannot be used in applications that require Sink Current capability.
4. The temperature sensor needs to be temperature calibrated at -10°C and 50°C.

Effective Number of Bits – ENOB
 $V_{REF}=1.65V, f_{ADCK}=133kHz$

Data Rate (SPS)	PGA Gain							
	1	2	4	8	16	32	64	128
4	21.5	21.2	21.2	21.1	20.9	20.5	20.0	19.2
8	21.3	21.0	20.9	20.7	20.5	20.2	19.5	18.7
16	20.9	20.6	20.5	20.4	20.2	19.8	19.1	18.3
33	20.4	20.1	20.1	20.0	19.8	19.4	18.8	18.0
65	19.8	19.5	19.5	19.4	19.2	18.8	18.2	17.5
130	19.3	19.0	19.0	18.9	18.7	18.4	17.8	17.0
260	18.8	18.5	18.5	18.4	18.3	17.9	17.3	16.5
521	18.3	18.1	18.1	18.0	17.8	17.5	16.8	16.0

 $V_{REF}=1.65V, f_{ADCK}=333kHz$

Data Rate (SPS)	PGA Gain							
	1	2	4	8	16	32	64	128
10	21.8	21.4	21.2	21.1	20.7	20.3	19.5	18.6
20	21.4	21.1	20.9	20.7	20.3	19.7	19.0	18.2
41	20.9	20.6	20.5	20.3	19.9	19.4	18.6	17.7
81	20.4	20.2	20.0	19.8	19.4	18.9	18.1	17.3
163	19.8	19.4	19.3	19.2	18.9	18.4	17.7	16.8
326	19.0	18.8	18.7	18.6	18.4	17.8	17.2	16.3
651	18.7	18.4	18.3	18.2	17.9	17.4	16.7	15.8
1302	18.2	18.0	17.9	17.7	17.3	16.7	16.2	15.4

 $V_{REF}=1.2V, f_{ADCK}=133kHz$

Data Rate (SPS)	PGA Gain							
	1	2	4	8	16	32	64	128
4	20.6	20.4	20.4	20.3	20.3	20.1	19.6	18.9
8	20.5	20.3	20.3	20.2	20.0	19.9	19.2	18.4
16	20.3	19.9	19.9	19.8	19.7	19.4	18.8	18.0
33	19.8	19.5	19.5	19.4	19.2	18.9	18.3	17.5
65	19.3	19.1	19.1	19.0	18.8	18.5	17.8	17.0
130	19.0	18.8	18.7	18.6	18.3	18.0	17.4	16.5
260	18.5	18.2	18.2	18.1	17.8	17.5	16.9	16.1
521	17.9	17.7	17.7	17.6	17.3	17.0	16.4	15.6

 $V_{REF}=1.2V, f_{ADCK}=333kHz$

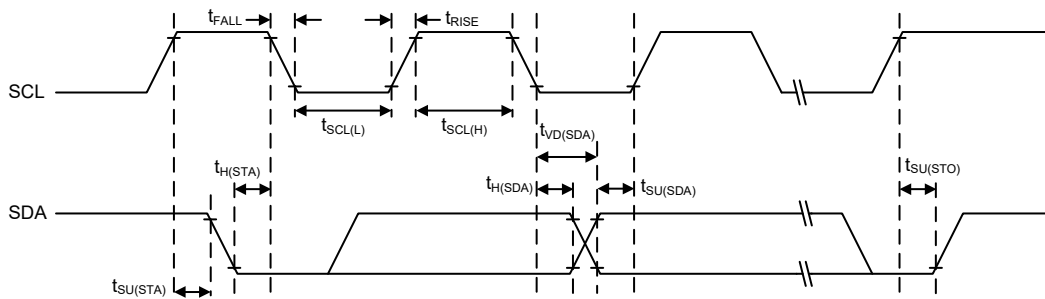
Data Rate (SPS)	PGA Gain							
	1	2	4	8	16	32	64	128
10	20.9	20.7	20.5	20.3	20.1	19.8	19.1	18.2
20	20.7	20.4	20.2	20.1	19.8	19.4	18.6	17.8
41	20.3	20.1	19.8	19.7	19.4	18.8	18.1	17.4
81	19.9	19.6	19.4	19.2	18.9	18.4	17.7	16.8
163	19.5	19.2	19.0	18.8	18.5	17.9	17.2	16.4
326	18.9	18.7	18.6	18.4	18.0	17.5	16.7	15.9
651	18.5	18.2	18.0	17.8	17.5	16.9	16.2	15.4
1302	17.9	17.6	17.5	17.3	16.9	16.4	15.7	14.9

I²C Electrical Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
f _{I2C}	I ² C Standard Mode (100kHz) f _{sys} Frequency <small>(Note)</small>	—	No clock debounce	2	—	—	MHz
			2 system clock debounce	4	—	—	
			4 system clock debounce	4	—	—	
	I ² C Fast Mode (400kHz) f _{sys} Frequency <small>(Note)</small>	—	No clock debounce	4	—	—	MHz
			2 system clock debounce	8	—	—	
			4 system clock debounce	8	—	—	
f _{SCL}	SCL Clock Frequency	3V/5V	Standard mode	—	—	100	kHz
			Fast mode	—	—	400	
t _{SCL(H)}	SCL Clock High Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	3.5	—	—	μs
			Fast mode	0.9	—	—	
t _{SCL(L)}	SCL Clock Low Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	3.5	—	—	μs
			Fast mode	0.9	—	—	
t _{FALL}	SCL and SDA Fall Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	—	—	1.3	μs
			Fast mode	—	—	0.34	
t _{RISE}	SCL and SDA Rise Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	—	—	1.3	μs
			Fast mode	—	—	0.34	
t _{SU(SDA)}	SDA Data Setup Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	0.25	—	—	μs
			Fast mode	0.1	—	—	
t _{H(SDA)}	SDA Data Hold Time	3V/5V	—	0.1	—	—	μs
t _{VD(SDA)}	SDA Data Valid Time	3V/5V	—	—	—	0.6	μs
t _{SU(STA)}	Start Condition Setup Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	3.5	—	—	μs
			Fast mode	0.6	—	—	
t _{H(STA)}	Start Condition Hold Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	4.0	—	—	μs
			Fast mode	0.6	—	—	
t _{SU(STO)}	Stop Condition Setup Time	3V/5V	Standard mode	3.5	—	—	μs
			Fast mode	0.6	—	—	

Note: Using the debounce function can make the transmission more stable and reduce the probability of communication failure due to interference.

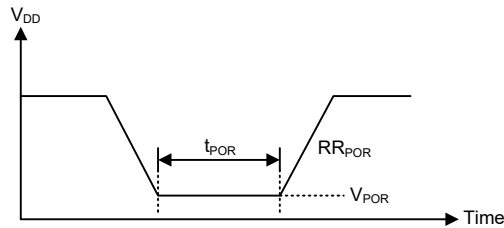


I²C Timing Diagram

Power-on Reset Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{POR}	V _{DD} Start Voltage to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	—	—	100	mV
RR _{POR}	V _{DD} Rising Rate to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	0.035	—	—	V/ms
t _{POR}	Minimum Time for V _{DD} Stays at V _{POR} to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	1	—	—	ms

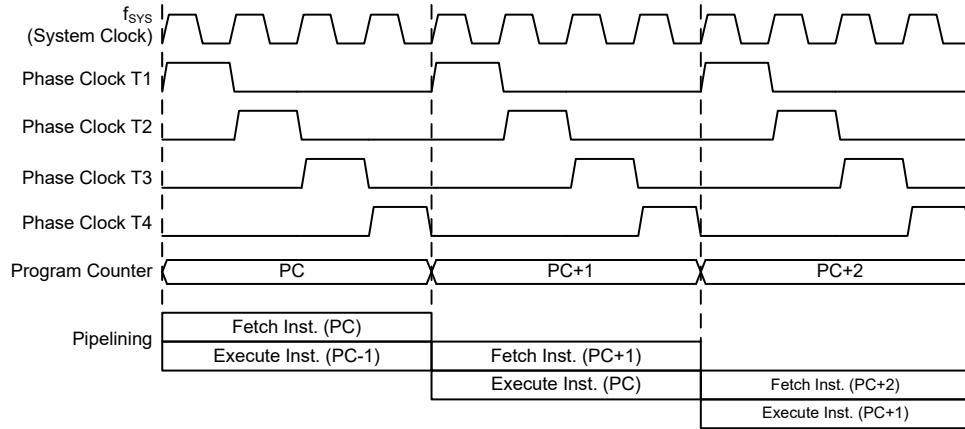


System Architecture

A key factor in the high-performance features of the Holtek range of microcontrollers is attributed to their internal system architecture. The range of the device take advantage of the usual features found within RISC microcontrollers providing increased speed of operation and enhanced performance. The pipelining scheme is implemented in such a way that instruction fetching and instruction execution are overlapped, hence instructions are effectively executed in one or two cycles for most of the standard or extended instructions respectively, with the exception of branch or call instructions which need one more cycle. An 8-bit wide ALU is used in practically all instruction set operations, which carries out arithmetic operations, logic operations, rotation, increment, decrement, branch decisions, etc. The internal data path is simplified by moving data through the Accumulator and the ALU. Certain internal registers are implemented in the Data Memory and can be directly or indirectly addressed. The simple addressing methods of these registers along with additional architectural features ensure that a minimum of external components is required to provide a functional I/O and A/D control system with maximum reliability and flexibility. This makes the device suitable for low-cost, high-volume production for controller applications.

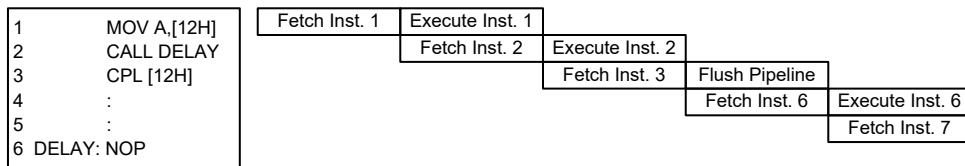
Clocking and Pipelining

The main system clock, derived from either an HIRC or LIRC oscillator is subdivided into four internally generated non-overlapping clocks, T1~T4. The Program Counter is incremented at the beginning of the T1 clock during which time a new instruction is fetched. The remaining T2~T4 clocks carry out the decoding and execution functions. In this way, one T1~T4 clock cycle forms one instruction cycle. Although the fetching and execution of instructions takes place in consecutive instruction cycles, the pipelining structure of the microcontroller ensures that instructions are effectively executed in one instruction cycle. The exception to this are instructions where the contents of the Program Counter are changed, such as subroutine calls or jumps, in which case the instruction will take one more instruction cycle to execute.



System Clocking and Pipelining

For instructions involving branches, such as jump or call instructions, two machine cycles are required to complete instruction execution. An extra cycle is required as the program takes one cycle to first obtain the actual jump or call address and then another cycle to actually execute the branch. The requirement for this extra cycle should be taken into account by programmers in timing sensitive applications.



Instruction Fetching

Program Counter

During program execution, the Program Counter is used to keep track of the address of the next instruction to be executed. It is automatically incremented by one each time an instruction is executed except for instructions, such as “JMP” or “CALL” that demand a jump to a non-consecutive Program Memory address. Only the lower 8 bits, known as the Program Counter Low Register, are directly addressable by the application program.

When executing instructions requiring jumps to non-consecutive addresses such as a jump instruction, a subroutine call, interrupt or reset, etc., the microcontroller manages program control by loading the required address into the Program Counter. For conditional skip instructions, once the condition has been met, the next instruction, which has already been fetched during the present instruction execution, is discarded and a dummy cycle takes its place while the correct instruction is obtained.

Program Counter	
Program Counter High Byte	PCL Register
PC12~PC8	PCL7~PCL0

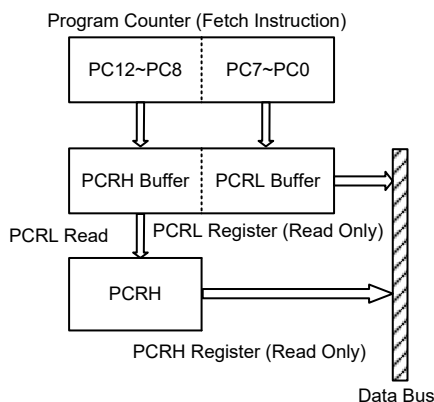
Program Counter

The lower byte of the Program Counter, known as the Program Counter Low register or PCL, is available for program control and is a readable and writeable register. By transferring data directly into this register, a short program jump can be executed directly; however, as only this low byte is available for manipulation, the jumps are limited to the present page of memory that is 256 locations. When such program jumps are executed it should also be noted that a dummy cycle will be inserted. Manipulating the PCL register may cause program branching, so an extra cycle is needed to pre-fetch.

Program Counter Read Registers

The Program Counter Read registers are a read only register pair for reading the program counter value which indicates the current program execution address. Read the low byte register first then the high byte register. Reading the low byte register, PCRL, will read the low byte data of the current program execution address, and place the high byte data of the program counter into the 8-bit PCRH buffer. Then reading the PCRH register will read the corresponding data from the 8-bit PCRH buffer. The following example shows how to read the current program execution address. When the current program execution address is 123H, the steps to execute the instructions are as follows:

- (1) MOV A, PCRL → the ACC value is 23H, and the PCRH value is 01H;
 MOV A, PCRH → the ACC value is 01H.
- (2) LMOV A, PCRL → the ACC value is 23H, and the PCRH value is 01H;
 LMOV A, PCRH → the ACC value is 01H.



• PCRL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Program Counter Read Low byte register bit 7 ~ bit 0

• PCRH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	R	R	R	R	R
POR	—	—	—	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 Unimplemented, read as “0”

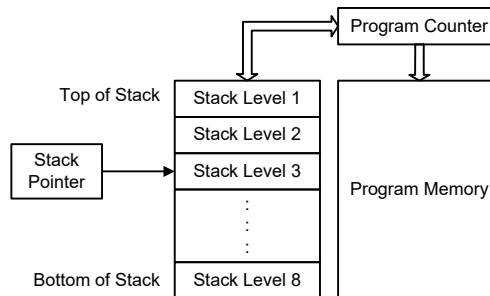
Bit 4~0 **D12~D8**: Program Counter Read High byte register bit 4 ~ bit 0

Stack

This is a special part of the memory which is used to save the contents of the Program Counter only. The stack is organized into 8 levels and is neither part of the data nor part of the program space, and is neither readable nor writeable. The activated level is indexed by the Stack Pointer, STKPTR[2:0]. At a subroutine call or interrupt acknowledge signal, the contents of the Program Counter are pushed onto the stack. At the end of a subroutine or an interrupt routine, signaled by a return instruction, RET or RETI, the Program Counter is restored to its previous value from the stack. After a device reset, the Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack.

If the stack is full and an enabled interrupt takes place, the interrupt request flag will be recorded but the acknowledge signal will be inhibited. When the Stack Pointer is decremented, by RET or RETI, the interrupt will be serviced. This feature prevents stack overflow allowing the programmer to use the structure more easily. However, when the stack is full, a CALL subroutine instruction can still be executed which will result in a stack overflow. Precautions should be taken to avoid such cases which might cause unpredictable program branching.

If the stack is overflow, the first Program Counter save in the stack will be lost.



• STKPTR Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	OSF	—	—	—	—	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R	R	R
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **OSF**: Stack overflow flag
 0: No stack overflow occurred
 1: Stack overflow occurred

When the stack is full and a CALL instruction is executed or when the stack is empty and a RET instruction is executed, the OSF bit will be set high. The OSF bit is cleared only by software and cannot be reset automatically by hardware.

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 2~0 **D2~D0**: Stack pointer register bit 2 ~ bit 0

The following example shows how the Stack Pointer and Stack Overflow Flag change when program branching conditions occur.

(1) When the CALL subroutine instruction is executed 9 times continuously and the RET instruction is not executed during the period, the corresponding changes of the STKPTR[2:0] and OSF bits are as follows:

CALL Execution Times	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
STKPTR[2:0] Bit Value	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	0	1
OSF Bit Value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

- (2) When the OSF bit is set high and not cleared, it will remain high no matter how many times the RET instruction is executed.
- (3) When the stack is empty, the RET instruction is executed 8 times continuously, the corresponding changes of the STKPTR[2:0] and OSF bits are as follows:

RET Execution Times	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
STKPTR[2:0] Bit Value	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
OSF Bit Value	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU

The arithmetic-logic unit or ALU is a critical area of the microcontroller that carries out arithmetic and logic operations of the instruction set. Connected to the main microcontroller data bus, the ALU receives related instruction codes and performs the required arithmetic or logical operations after which the result will be placed in the specified register. As these ALU calculation or operations may result in carry, borrow or other status changes, the status register will be correspondingly updated to reflect these changes. The ALU supports the following functions:

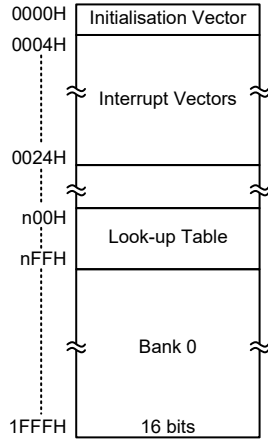
- Arithmetic operations:
ADD, ADDM, ADC, ADCM, SUB, SUBM, SBC, SBCM, DAA,
LADD, LADDM, LADC, LADCM, LSUB, LSUBM, LSBC, LSBCM, LDAA
- Logic operations:
AND, OR, XOR, ANDM, ORM, XORM, CPL, CPLA,
LAND, LANDM, LOR, LORM, LXOR, LXORM, LCPL, LCPLA
- Rotation:
RRA, RR, RRCA, RRC, RLA, RL, RLCA, RLC,
LRR, LRRCA, LRRCA, LRRCA, LRLA, LRL, LRLCA, LRLC
- Increment and Decrement:
INCA, INC, DECA, DEC,
LINCA, LINC, LDECA, LDEC
- Branch decision:
JMP, SZ, SZA, SNZ, SIZ, SDZ, SIZA, SDZA, CALL, RET, RETI,
LSNZ, LSZ, LSZA, LSIZ, LSIZA, LSDZ, LSDZA

Flash Program Memory

The Program Memory is the location where the user code or program is stored. For the device the Program Memory are Flash type, which means it can be programmed and re-programmed a large number of times, allowing the user the convenience of code modification on the same device. By using the appropriate programming tools, the Flash device offers users the flexibility to conveniently debug and develop their applications while also offering a means of field programming and updating.

Structure

The Program Memory has a capacity of 8K×16 bits for the device. The Program Memory is addressed by the Program Counter and also contains data, table information and interrupt entries. Table data, which can be setup in any location within the Program Memory, is addressed by a separate table pointer registers.



Program Memory Structure

Special Vectors

Within the Program Memory, certain locations are reserved for the reset and interrupts. The location 0000H is reserved for use by the device reset for program initialisation. After a device reset is initiated, the program will jump to this location and begin execution.

Look-up Table

Any location within the Program Memory can be defined as a look-up table where programmers can store fixed data. To use the look-up table, the table pointer must first be setup by placing the address of the look up data to be retrieved in the table pointer register, TBLP and TBHP. These registers define the total address of the look-up table.

After setting up the table pointer, the table data can be retrieved from the Program Memory using the “TABRD [m]” or “TABRDL [m]” instructions respectively when the memory [m] is located in sector 0. If the memory [m] is located in other sectors except sector 0, the data can be retrieved from the program memory using the corresponding extended table read instruction such as “LTABRD [m]” or “LTABRDL [m]” respectively. When the instruction is executed, the lower order table byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the user defined Data Memory register [m] as specified in the instruction. The higher order table data byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the TBLH special register. Any unused bits in this transferred higher order byte will be read as “0”.

The accompanying diagram illustrates the addressing data flow of the look-up table.

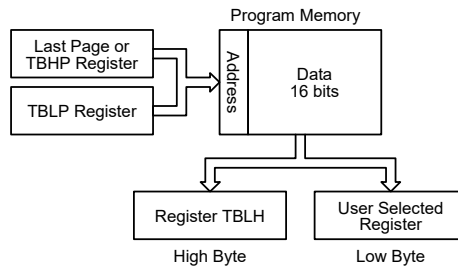


Table Program Example

The following example shows how the table pointer and table data is defined and retrieved from the microcontroller. This example uses raw table data located in the Program Memory which is stored there using the ORG statement. The value at this ORG statement is “1F00H” which refers to the start address of the last page within the 8K words Program Memory of the device. The table pointer low byte register is setup here to have an initial value of “06H”. This will ensure that the first data read from the data table will be at the Program Memory address “1F06H” or 6 locations after the start of the last page. Note that the value for the table pointer is referenced to the specific address pointed by the TBHP and TBLP registers if the “TABRD [m]” or “LTABRD [m]” instruction is being used. The high byte of the table data which in this case is equal to zero will be transferred to the TBLH register automatically when the “TABRD [m]” or “LTABRD [m]” instruction is executed.

Because the TBLH register is a read/write register and can be restored, care should be taken to ensure its protection if both the main routine and Interrupt Service Routine use table read instructions. If using the table read instructions, the Interrupt Service Routines may change the value of the TBLH and subsequently cause errors if used again by the main routine. As a rule it is recommended that simultaneous use of the table read instructions should be avoided. However, in situations where simultaneous use cannot be avoided, the interrupts should be disabled prior to the execution of any main routine table-read instructions. Note that all table related instructions require two instruction cycles to complete their operation.

Table Read Program Example

```

tempreg1 db ?      ; temporary register #1
tempreg2 db ?      ; temporary register #2
:
:
mov a,06h          ; initialise low table pointer - note that this address is referenced
mov tblp,a         ; to the last page or the page that tbhp pointed
mov a,1Fh          ; initialise high table pointer
mov tbhp,a
:
:
tabrd tempreg1     ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer data at program
                  ; memory address "1F06H" transferred to tempreg1 and TBLH
dec tblp           ; reduce value of table pointer by one
tabrd tempreg2     ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer
                  ; data at program memory address "1F05H" transferred to
                  ; tempreg2 and TBLH in this example the data "1AH" is
                  ; transferred to tempreg1 and data "0FH" to register tempreg2
:
:
org 1F00h          ; sets initial address of program memory
dc 00Ah, 00Bh, 00Ch, 00Dh, 00Eh, 00Fh, 01Ah, 01Bh
:
:

```

In Circuit Programming – ICP

The provision of Flash type Program Memory provides the user with a means of convenient and easy upgrades and modifications to their programs on the same device.

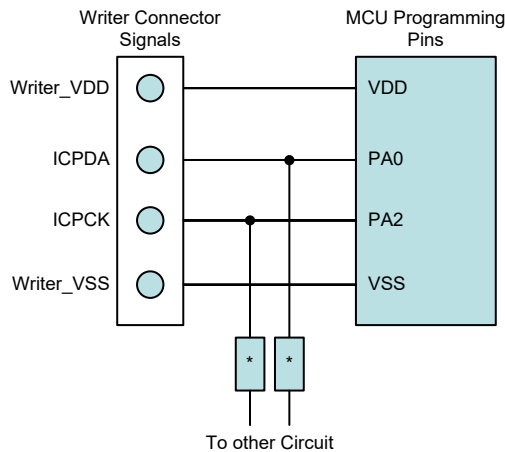
As an additional convenience, Holtek has provided a means of programming the microcontroller in-circuit using a 4-pin interface. This provides manufacturers with the possibility of manufacturing their circuit boards complete with a programmed or un-programmed microcontroller, and then programming or upgrading the program at a later stage. This enables product manufacturers to easily

keep their manufactured products supplied with the latest program releases without removal and re-insertion of the device.

Holtek Writer Pins	MCU Programming Pins	Pin Description
ICPDA	PA0	Programming Serial Data/Address
ICPCK	PA2	Programming Clock
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

The Program Memory can be programmed serially in-circuit using this 4-wire interface. Data is downloaded and uploaded serially on a single pin with an additional line for the clock. Two additional lines are required for the power supply. The technical details regarding the in-circuit programming of the device are beyond the scope of this document and will be supplied in supplementary literature.

During the programming process, the user must take care of the ICPDA and ICPCK pins for data and clock programming purposes to ensure that no other outputs are connected to these two pins.



Note: * may be resistor or capacitor. The resistance of * must be greater than 1kΩ or the capacitance of * must be less than 1nF.

On-Chip Debug Support – OCDS

An EV chip exists for the purposes of device emulation. This EV chip device also provides an “On-Chip Debug” function to debug the real MCU device during the development process. The EV chip and the real MCU device are almost functionally compatible except for “On-Chip Debug” function. Users can use the EV chip device to emulate the real chip device behavior by connecting the OCSDA and OCDSCK pins to the Holtek HT-IDE development tools. The OCSDA pin is the OCDS Data/Address input/output pin while the OCDSCK pin is the OCDS clock input pin. When users use the EV chip for debugging, other functions which are shared with the OCSDA and OCDSCK pins in the device will have no effect in the EV chip. For more detailed OCDS information, refer to the corresponding document named “Holtek e-Link for 8-bit MCU OCDS User’s Guide”.

Holtek e-Link Pins	EV Chip Pins	Pin Description
OCSDA	OCSDA	On-Chip Debug Support Data/Address input/output
OCDSCK	OCDSCK	On-Chip Debug Support Clock input
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

In Application Programming – IAP

Flash type Program Memory provides the user with a means of convenient and easy upgrades and modifications to their programs on the same device. The provision of the IAP function offers users the convenience of Flash Memory multi-programming features. The convenience of the IAP function is that it can execute the updated program procedure using its internal firmware, without requiring an external Program Writer or PC. In addition, the IAP interface can also be any type of communication protocol, such as UART, using I/O pins. Regarding the internal firmware, the user can select versions provided by Holtek or create their own. The following section illustrates the procedures regarding how to implement the IAP firmware.

Flash Memory Read/Write Size

The Flash memory Erase and Write operations are carried out in a page format while the Read operation is carried out in a word format. The page size and write buffer size are both assigned with a capacity of 32 words. Note that the Erase operation should be executed before the Write operation is executed.

When the Flash Memory Erase/Write Function is successfully enabled, the CFWEN bit will be set high. When the CFWEN bit is set high, the data can be written into the write buffer. The FWT bit is used to initiate the write process and then indicate the write operation status. This bit is set high by application programs to initiate a write process and will be cleared by hardware if the write process is finished.

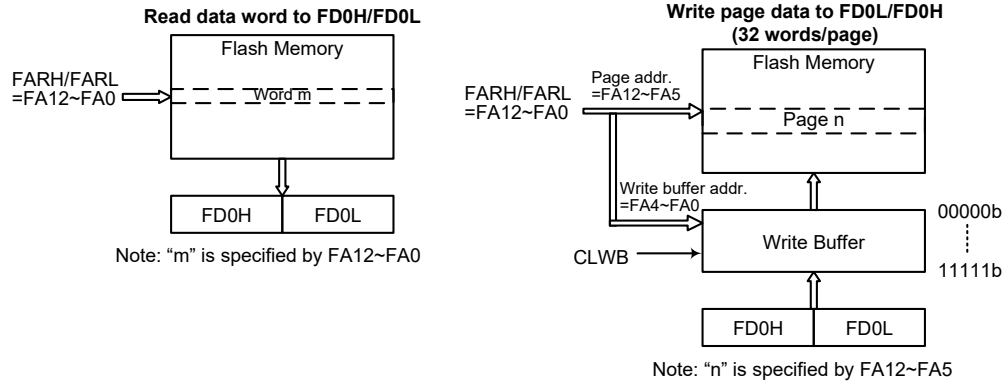
The Read operation can be carried out by executing a specific read procedure. The FRDEN bit is used to enable the read function and the FRD bit is used to initiate the read process by application programs and then indicate the read operation status. When the read process is finished, this bit will be cleared by hardware.

Operations	Format
Erase	32 words/page
Write	32 words/time
Read	1 word/time
Note: Page size = Write buffer size = 32 words.	

IAP Operation Format

Page	FARH	FARL[7:5]	FARL[4:0]
0	0000 0000	000	Tag Address
1	0000 0000	001	
2	0000 0000	010	
3	0000 0000	011	
4	0000 0000	100	
:	:	:	
:	:	:	
254	0001 1111	110	
255	0001 1111	111	

Page Number and Address Selection



Flash Memory IAP Read/Write Structure

Write Buffer

The write buffer is used to store the written data temporarily when executing the write operation. The Write Buffer can be filled with written data after the Flash Memory Erase/Write Function has been successfully enabled by executing the Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable procedure. The write buffer can be cleared by configuring the CLWB bit in the FC2 register. The CLWB bit can be set high to enable the Clear Write Buffer procedure. When the procedure is finished this bit will be cleared to zero by hardware. It is recommended that the write buffer should be cleared by setting the CLWB bit high before the write buffer is used for the first time or when the data in the write buffer is updated.

The write buffer size is 32 words corresponding to a page. The write buffer address is mapped to a specific Flash memory page specified by the memory address bits, FA12~FA5. The data written into the FD0L and FD0H registers will be loaded into the write buffer. When data is written into the high byte data register, FD0H, it will result in the data stored in the high and low byte data registers both being written into the write buffer. It will also cause the Flash memory address to be incremented by one, after which the new address will be loaded into the FARH and FARL address registers. When the Flash memory address reaches the page boundary, 11111b of a page with 32 words, the address will now not be incremented but stop at the last address of the page. At this point a new page address should be specified for any other erase/write operations.

After a write process is finished, the write buffer will automatically be cleared by hardware. Note that the write buffer should be cleared manually by the application program when the data written into the Flash memory is incorrect in the data verification step. The data should again be written into the write buffer after the write buffer has been cleared when the data is found to be incorrect during the data verification step.

IAP Flash Program Memory Registers

There are two address registers, four 16-bit data registers and three control registers, which are all located in Sector 0. Read and Write operations to the Flash memory are carried out using 16-bit data operations using the address and data registers and the control register. Several registers control the overall operation of the internal Flash Program Memory. The address registers are named FARL and FARH, the data registers are named FDnL and FDnH and the control registers are named FC0, FC1 and FC2. As these registers are all located in Sector 0, they can be directly accessed in the same way as any other Special Function Register.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
FC0	CFWEN	FMOD2	FMOD1	FMOD0	FWPEN	FWT	FRDEN	FRD
FC1	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FC2	—	—	—	—	—	—	FWERTS	CLWB
FARL	FA7	FA6	FA5	FA4	FA3	FA2	FA1	FA0
FARH	—	—	—	FA12	FA11	FA10	FA9	FA8
FD0L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD0H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD1L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD1H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD2L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD2H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD3L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD3H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8

IAP Register List
• FC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CFWEN	FMOD2	FMOD1	FMOD0	FWPEN	FWT	FRDEN	FRD
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **CFWEN**: Flash Memory Erase/Write function enable control
0: Flash memory erase/write function is disabled
1: Flash memory erase/write function has been successfully enabled
When this bit is cleared to 0 by application program, the Flash memory erase/write function is disabled. Note that this bit cannot be set high by application programs. Writing a “1” into this bit results in no action. This bit is used to indicate the Flash memory erase/write function status. When this bit is set to 1 by hardware, it means that the Flash memory erase/write function is enabled successfully. Otherwise, the Flash memory erase/write function is disabled if the bit is zero.
- Bit 6~4 **FMOD2~FMOD0**: Flash memory Mode selection
000: Write Mode
001: Page Erase Mode
010: Reserved
011: Read Mode
100: Reserved
101: Reserved
110: Flash memory Erase/Write function Enable Mode
111: Reserved
These bits are used to select the Flash Memory operation modes. Note that the “Flash memory Erase/Write function Enable Mode” should first be successfully enabled before the Erase or Write Flash memory operation is executed.
- Bit 3 **FWPEN**: Flash memory Erase/Write function enable procedure Trigger
0: Erase/Write function enable procedure is not triggered or procedure timer times out
1: Erase/Write function enable procedure is triggered and procedure timer starts to count
This bit is used to activate the Flash memory Erase/Write function enable procedure and an internal timer. It is set by the application programs and then cleared by hardware when the internal timer times out. The correct patterns must be written into the FD1L/FD1H, FD2L/FD2H and FD3L/FD3H register pairs respectively as soon as possible after the FWPEN bit is set high.

- Bit 2 **FWT**: Flash memory write initiate control
 0: Do not initiate Flash memory write or indicating that a Flash memory write process has completed
 1: Initiate Flash memory write process
 This bit is set by software and cleared by hardware when the Flash memory write process has completed.
- Bit 1 **FRDEN**: Flash memory read enable control
 0: Flash memory read disable
 1: Flash memory read enable
 This is the Flash memory Read Enable Bit which must be set high before any Flash memory read operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Flash memory read operations.
- Bit 0 **FRD**: Flash memory read initiate control
 0: Do not initiate Flash memory read or indicating that a Flash memory read process has completed
 1: Initiate Flash memory read process
 This bit is set by software and cleared by hardware when the Flash memory read process has completed.

- Note: 1. The FWT, FRDEN and FRD bits cannot be set to “1” at the same time with a single instruction.
 2. Ensure that the f_{SUB} clock is stable before executing the erase or write operation.
 3. Note that the CPU will be stopped when a read, write or erase operation is successfully activated.
 4. Ensure that the read, erase or write operation is totally complete before executing other operations.

• **FC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Chip Reset Pattern
 When a specific value of “55H” is written into this register, a reset signal will be generated to reset the whole chip.

• **FC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	FWERTS	CLWB
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

- Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 1 **FWERTS**: Erase time and Write time selection
 0: Erase time is 3.2ms (t_{FER}) / Write time is 2.2ms (t_{FWR})
 1: Erase time is 3.7ms (t_{FER}) / Write time is 3.0ms (t_{FWR})
- Bit 0 **CLWB**: Flash memory Write Buffer Clear control
 0: Do not initiate a Write Buffer Clear process or indicating that a Write Buffer Clear process has completed
 1: Initiate Write Buffer Clear process
 This bit is set by software and cleared by hardware when the Write Buffer Clear process has completed.

• FARL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	FA7	FA6	FA5	FA4	FA3	FA2	FA1	FA0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **FA7~FA0**: Flash Memory Address bit 7 ~ bit 0

• FARH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	FA12	FA11	FA10	FA9	FA8
R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 4~0 **FA12~FA8**: Flash Memory Address bit 12 ~ bit 8

• FD0L Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: The first Flash Memory data word bit 7 ~ bit 0

Note that data written into the low byte data register FD0L will only be stored in the FD0L register and not loaded into the lower 8-bit write buffer.

• FD0H Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The first Flash Memory data word bit 15 ~ bit 8

Note that when 8-bit data is written into the high byte data register FD0H, the whole 16 bits of data stored in the FD0H and FD0L registers will simultaneously be loaded into the 16-bit write buffer after which the contents of the Flash memory address register pair, FARH and FARL, will be incremented by one.

• FD1L Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: The second Flash Memory data word bit 7 ~ bit 0

• FD1H Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The second Flash Memory data word bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **FD2L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: The third Flash Memory data word bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **FD2H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The third Flash Memory data word bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **FD3L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: The fourth Flash Memory data word bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **FD3H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The fourth Flash Memory data word bit 15 ~ bit 8

Flash Memory Erase/Write Flow

It is important to understand the Flash memory Erase/Write flow before the Flash memory contents are updated. Users can refer to the corresponding operation procedures when developing their IAP program to ensure that the Flash memory contents are correctly updated.

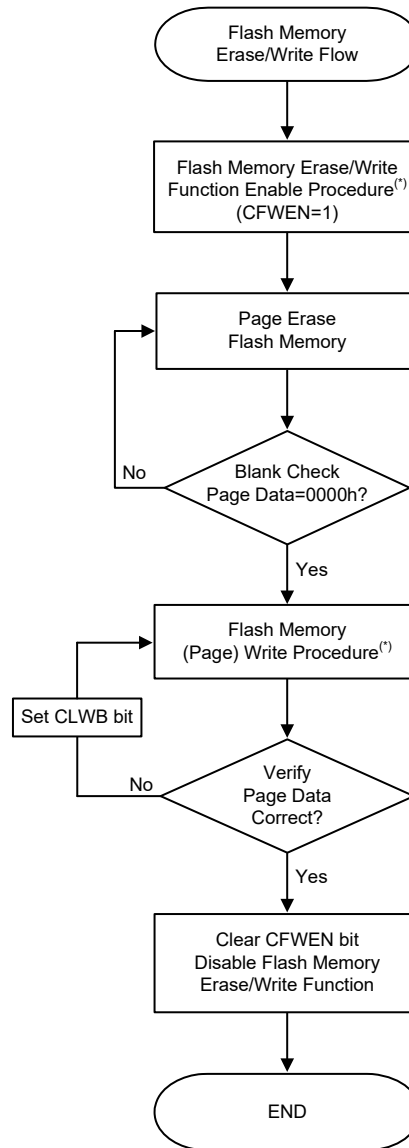
Flash Memory Erase/Write Flow Descriptions

1. Activate the “Flash Memory Erase/Write function enable procedure” first. When the Flash Memory Erase/Write function is successfully enabled, the CFWEN bit in the FC0 register will automatically be set high by hardware. After this, Erase or Write operations can be executed on the Flash memory. Refer to the “Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Procedure” for details.

2. Configure the Flash memory address to select the desired erase page, tag address and then erase this page.

For a page erase operation, set the FARL and FARH registers to specify the start address of the erase page, then write dummy data into the FD0H register to tag address. The current address will be internally incremented by one after each dummy data is written into the FD0H register. When the address reaches the page boundary, 11111b, the address will not be further incremented but stop at the last address of the page. Note that the write operation to the FD0H register is used to tag address, it must be implemented to determine which addresses to be erased.

3. Execute a Blank Check operation to ensure whether the page erase operation is successful or not. The “TABRD” instruction should be executed to read the Flash memory contents and to check if the contents is 0000h or not. If the Flash memory page erase operation fails, users should go back to Step 2 and execute the page erase operation again.
4. Write data into the specific page. Refer to the “Flash Memory Write Procedure” for details.
5. Execute the “TABRD” instruction to read the Flash memory contents and check if the written data is correct or not. If the data read from the Flash memory is different from the written data, it means that the page write operation has failed. The CLWB bit should be set high to clear the write buffer and then write the data into the specific page again if the write operation has failed.
6. Clear the CFWEN bit to disable the Flash Memory Erase/Write function enable mode if the current page Erase and Write operations are complete if no more pages need to be erased or written.



Flash Memory Erase/Write Flow

Note: The Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable procedure and Flash Memory Write procedure will be described in the following sections.

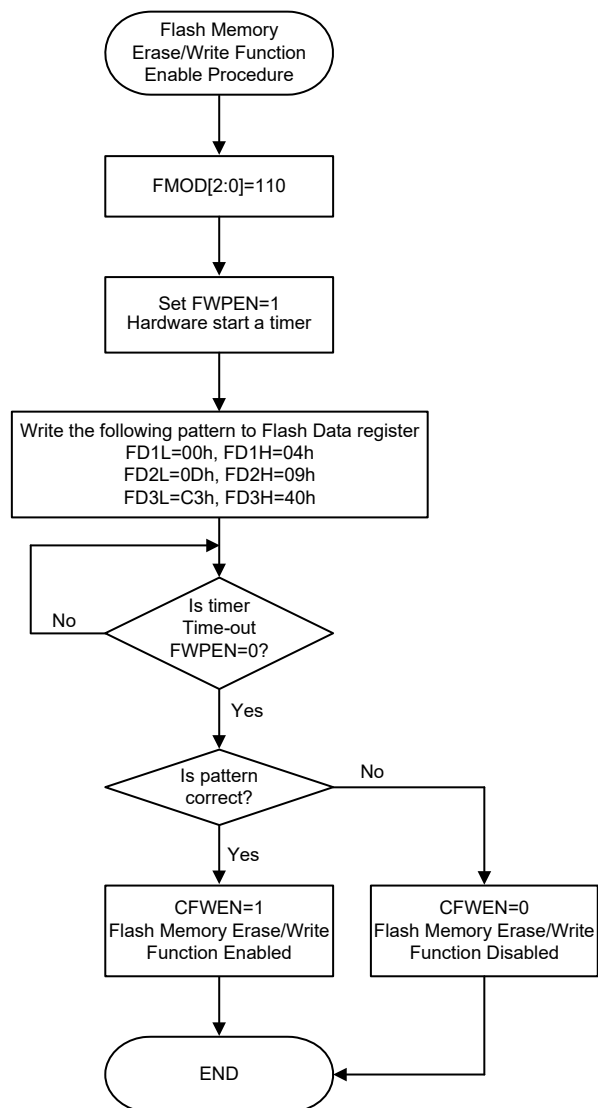
Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Procedure

The Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Mode is specially designed to prevent the Flash memory contents from being wrongly modified. In order to allow users to change the Flash memory data using the IAP control registers, users must first enable the Flash memory Erase/Write function.

Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Procedure Description

1. Write data “110” to the FMOD [2:0] bits in the FC0 register to select the Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Mode.
2. Set the FWPEN bit in the FC0 register to “1” to activate the Flash Memory Erase/Write Function. This will also activate an internal timer.
3. Write the correct data pattern into the Flash data registers, FD1L~FD3L and FD1H~FD3H, as soon as possible after the FWPEN bit is set high. The enable Flash memory erase/write function data pattern is 00H, 0DH, C3H, 04H, 09H and 40H corresponding to the FD1L~FD3L and FD1H~FD3H registers respectively.
4. Once the timer has timed out, the FWPEN bit will automatically be cleared to 0 by hardware regardless of the input data pattern.
5. If the written data pattern is incorrect, the Flash memory erase/write function will not be enabled successfully and the above steps should be repeated. If the written data pattern is correct, the Flash memory erase/write function will be enabled successfully.
6. Once the Flash memory erase/write function is enabled, the Flash memory contents can be updated by executing the page erase and write operations using the IAP control registers.

To disable the Flash memory erase/write function, the CFWEN bit in the FC0 register can be cleared. There is no need to execute the above procedure.



Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Procedure

Flash Memory Write Procedure

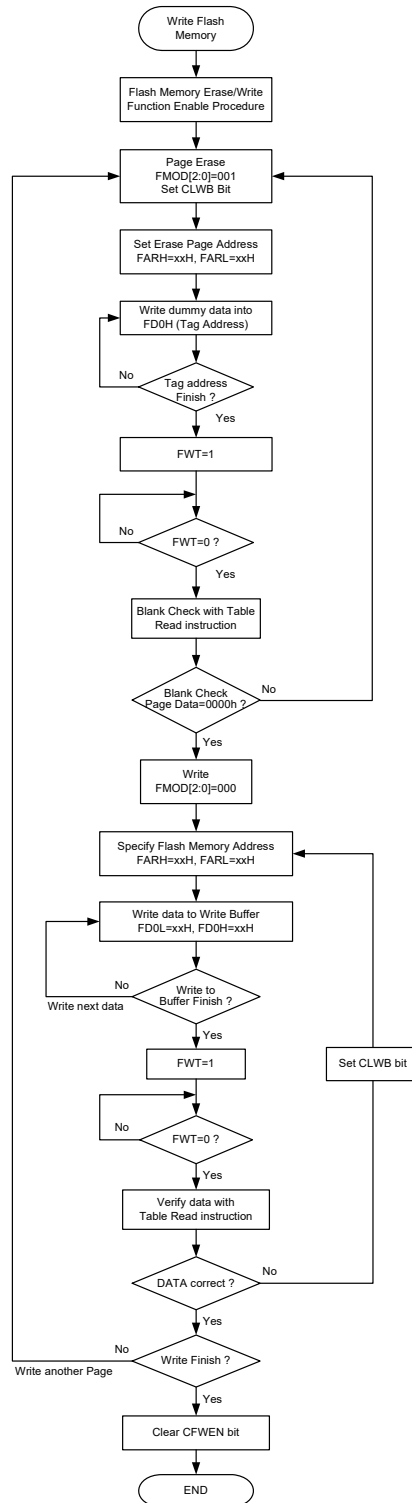
After the Flash memory erase/write function has been successfully enabled as the CFWEN bit is set high, the data to be written into the Flash memory can be loaded into the write buffer. The selected Flash memory page data should be erased by properly configuring the IAP control registers before the data write procedure is executed.

The write buffer size is 32 words, known as a page, whose address is mapped to a specific Flash memory page specified by the memory address bits, FA12~FA5. It is important to ensure that the page where the write buffer data is located is the same one which the memory address bits specify.

Flash Memory Consecutive Write Description

The maximum amount of write data is 32 words for each write operation. The write buffer address will be automatically incremented by one when consecutive write operations are executed. The start address of a specific page should first be written into the FARL and FARH registers. Then the data word should be written into the FD0L register and then the FD0H register. At the same time the write buffer address will be incremented by one and then the next data word can be written into the FD0L and FD0H registers for the next address without modifying the address register pair, FARH and FARL. When the write buffer address reaches the page boundary the address will not be further incremented but will stop at the last address of the page.

1. Activate the “Flash Memory Erase/Write function enable procedure”. Check the CFWEN bit value and then execute the erase/write operations if the CFWEN bit is set high. Refer to the “Flash Memory Erase/Write function enable procedure” for more details.
2. Set the FMOD field to “001” to select the erase operation and set the CLWB bit high to clear the write buffer. Set the FWT bit high to erase the desired page which is specified by the FARH and FARL registers and has been tagged address. Wait until the FWT bit goes low.
3. Execute a Blank Check operation using the table read instruction to ensure that the erase operation has successfully completed.
Go to step 2 if the erase operation is not successful.
Go to step 4 if the erase operation is successful.
4. Set the FMOD field to “000” to select the write operation.
5. Setup the desired start address in the FARH and FARL registers. Write the desired data words consecutively into the FD0L and FD0H registers within a page as specified by their consecutive addresses. The maximum written data number is 32 words.
6. Set the FWT bit high to write the data words from the write buffer to the Flash memory. Wait until the FWT bit goes low.
7. Verify the data using the table read instruction to ensure that the write operation has successfully completed.
If the write operation has not successfully completed, set the CLWB bit high to clear the write buffer and then go to step 5.
Go to step 8 if the write operation is successful.
8. Clear the CFWEN bit low to disable the Flash memory erase/write function.



Flash Memory Consecutive Write Procedure

- Note: 1. When the erase or write operation is successfully activated, all CPU operations will temporarily cease.
 2. It will take certain time for the FWT bit state changing from high to low in the erase or write operation, which can be selected by the FWERTS bit in the FC2 register.

Flash Memory Non-consecutive Write Description

The main difference between Flash Memory Consecutive and Non-consecutive Write operations is whether the data words to be written are located in consecutive addresses or not. If the data to be written is not located in consecutive addresses the desired address should be re-assigned after a data word is successfully written into the Flash Memory.

A two data word non-consecutive write operation is taken as an example here and described as follows:

1. Activate the “Flash Memory Erase/Write function enable procedure”. Check the CFWEN bit value and then execute the erase/write operation if the CFWEN bit is set high. Refer to the “Flash Memory Erase/Write function enable procedure” for more details.
2. Set the FMOD field to “001” to select the erase operation and set the CLWB bit high to clear the write buffer. Set the FWT bit high to erase the desired page which is specified by the FARH and FARL registers and has been tagged address. Wait until the FWT bit goes low.
3. Execute a Blank Check operation using the table read instruction to ensure that the erase operation has successfully completed.

Go to step 2 if the erase operation is not successful.

Go to step 4 if the erase operation is successful.

4. Set the FMOD field to “000” to select the write operation.
5. Setup the desired address ADDR1 in the FARH and FARL registers. Write the desired data word DATA1 first into the FD0L register and then into the FD0H register.
6. Set the FWT bit high to transfer the data word from the write buffer to the Flash memory. Wait until the FWT bit goes low.
7. Verify the data using the table read instruction to ensure that the write operation has successfully completed.

If the write operation has not successfully completed, set the CLWB bit high to clear the write buffer and then go to step 5.

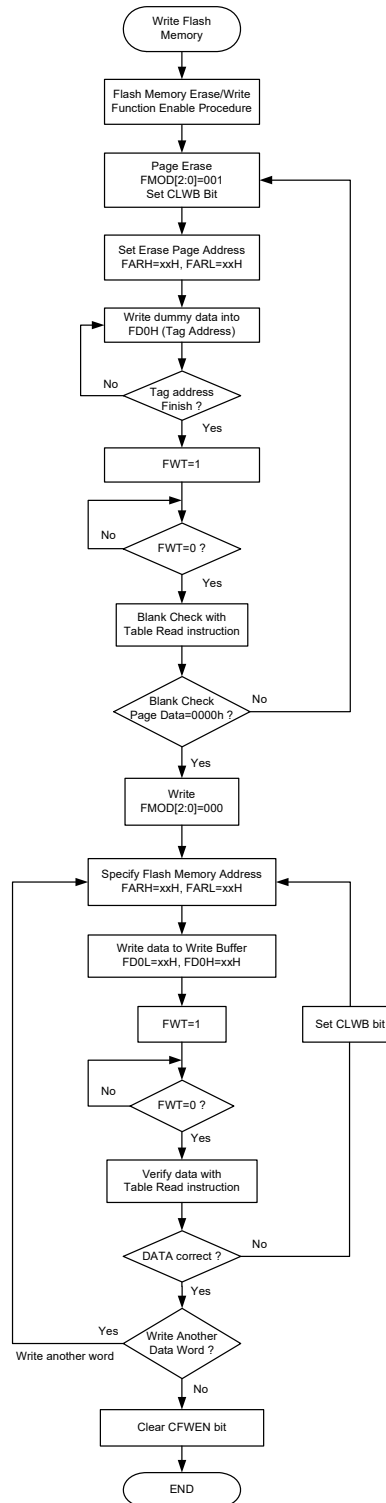
Go to step 8 if the write operation is successful.

8. Setup the desired address ADDR2 in the FARH and FARL registers. Write the desired data word DATA2 first into the FD0L register and then into the FD0H register.
9. Set the FWT bit high to transfer the data word from the write buffer to the Flash memory. Wait until the FWT bit goes low.
10. Verify the data using the table read instruction to ensure that the write operation has successfully completed.

If the write operation has not successfully completed, set the CLWB bit high to clear the write buffer and then go to step 8.

Go to step 11 if the write operation is successful.

11. Clear the CFWEN bit low to disable the Flash memory erase/write function.



Flash Memory Non-consecutive Write Procedure

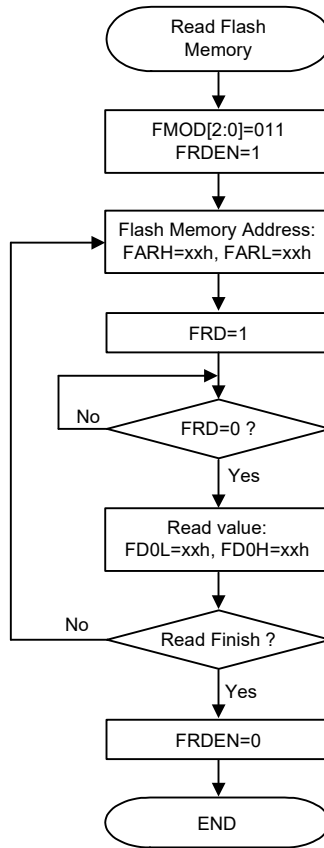
- Note: 1. When the erase or write operation is successfully activated, all CPU operations will temporarily cease.
 2. It will take certain time for the FWT bit state changing from high to low in the erase or write operation, which can be selected by the FWERTS bit in the FC2 register.

Important Points to Note for Flash Memory Write Operations

1. The “Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Procedure” must be successfully activated before the Flash Memory erase/write operation is executed.
2. The Flash Memory erase operation is executed to erase a whole page.
3. The whole write buffer data will be written into the Flash memory in a page format. The corresponding address cannot exceed the page boundary.
4. After the data is written into the Flash memory the Flash memory contents must be read out using the table read instruction, TABRD, and checked if it is correct or not. If the data written into the Flash memory is incorrect, the write buffer should be cleared by setting the CLWB bit high and then writing the data again into the write buffer. Then activate a write operation on the same Flash memory page without erasing it. The data check, buffer clear and data re-write steps should be repeatedly executed until the data written into the Flash memory is correct.
5. The system frequency should be setup to the maximum application frequency when data write and data check operations are executed using the IAP function.

Flash Memory Read Procedure

To activate the Flash Memory Read procedure, the FMOD field should be set to “011” to select the Flash memory read mode and the FRDEN bit should be set high to enable the read function. The desired Flash memory address should be written into the FARH and FARL registers and then the FRD bit should be set high. After this the Flash memory read operation will be activated. The data stored in the specified address can be read from the data registers, FD0H and FD0L, when the FRD bit goes low. There is no need to first activate the Flash Memory Erase/Write Function Enable Procedure before the Flash memory read operation is executed.



Flash Memory Read Procedure

- Note: 1. When the read operation is successfully activated, all CPU operations will temporarily cease.
2. It will take a typical time of three instruction cycles for the FRD bit state changing from high to low.

Data Memory

The Data Memory is a volatile area of 8-bit wide RAM internal memory and is the location where temporary information is stored.

Categorized into two types, the first of these is an area of RAM where special function registers are located. These registers have fixed locations and are necessary for correct operation of the device. Many of these registers can be read from and written to directly under program control, however, some remain protected from user manipulation. The second area of Data Memory is reserved for general purpose use. All locations within this area are read and write accessible under program control.

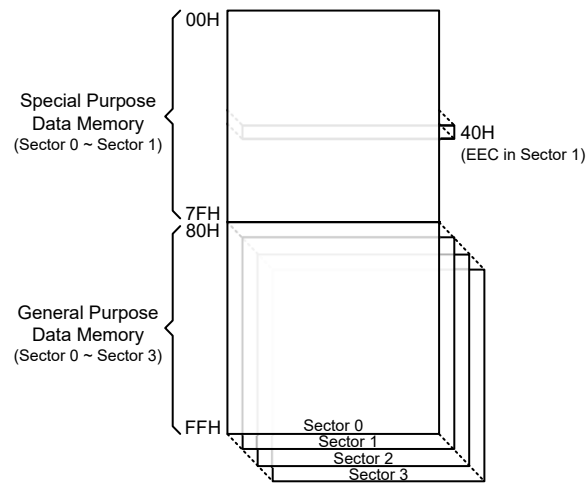
Structure

The Data Memory is subdivided into several sectors, all of which are implemented in 8-bit wide RAM. Each of the Data Memory Sector is categorized into two types, the special Purpose Data Memory and the General Purpose Data Memory. The address range of the Special Purpose Data Memory for the device is from 00H to 7FH while the General Purpose Data Memory address range is from 80H to FFH.

Switching between the different Data Memory sectors is achieved by properly setting the Memory Pointers to correct value if using the indirect addressing method.

Special Purpose Data Memory	General Purpose Data Memory	
Located Sectors	Capacity	Sector: Address
0, 1	512×8	0: 80H~FFH 1: 80H~FFH 2: 80H~FFH 3: 80H~FFH

Data Memory Summary



Data Memory Structure

Data Memory Addressing

For the device that supports the extended instructions, there is no Bank Pointer for Data Memory. For Data Memory the desired Sector is pointed by the MP1H or MP2H register and the certain Data Memory address in the selected sector is specified by the MP1L or MP2L register when using indirect addressing access.

Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the extended instructions which can address all available data memory space. For the accessed data memory which is located in any data memory sectors except sector 0, the extended instructions can be used to access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. The main difference between standard instructions and extended instructions is that the data memory address “m” in the extended instructions has 10 valid bits for this device, the high byte indicates a sector and the low byte indicates a specific address.

General Purpose Data Memory

All microcontroller programs require an area of read/write memory where temporary data can be stored and retrieved for use later. It is this area of RAM memory that is known as General Purpose Data Memory. This area of Data Memory is fully accessible by the user programming for both reading and writing operations. By using the bit operation instructions individual bits can be set or reset under program control giving the user a large range of flexibility for bit manipulation in the Data Memory.

Special Purpose Data Memory

This area of Data Memory is where registers, necessary for the correct operation of the microcontroller, are stored. Most of the registers are both readable and writeable but some are protected and are readable only, the details of which are located under the relevant Special Function Register section. Note that for locations that are unused, any read instruction to these addresses will return the value “00H”.

Sector 0		Sector 1	Sector 0		Sector 1
00H	IAR0		40H		EEC
01H	MP0		41H	SIMC0	
02H	IAR1		42H	SIMC1	
03H	MP1L		43H	SIMC2/SIMA	
04H	MP1H		44H	SIMD	
05H	ACC		45H	SIMTOC	
06H	PCL		46H	USR	
07H	TBLP		47H	UCR1	
08H	TBLH		48H	UCR2	
09H	TBHP		49H	UCR3	
0AH	STATUS		4AH	BRDH	
0BH			4BH	BRDL	
0CH	IAR2		4CH	UFCD	
0DH	MP2L		4DH	TXR_RXR	
0EH	MP2H		4EH	RxCNT	
0FH	RSTFC		4FH		
10H	SCC		50H		
11H	HIRCC		51H		
12H	STKPTR		52H	FC0	
13H	IECC		53H	FC1	
14H	PA		54H	FC2	
15H	PAC		55H	FARL	
16H	PAPU		56H	FARH	
17H	PAWU		57H	FD0L	
18H	RSTC		58H	FD0H	
19H	LVRC		59H	FD1L	
1AH	LVDC		5AH	FD1H	
1BH	MFIO		5BH	FD2L	
1CH	MF1		5CH	FD2H	
1DH	TLVRC		5DH	FD3L	
1EH	WDT		5EH	FD3H	
1FH	INTEG		5FH	PWRC	
20H	INTC0		60H	PGAC0	
21H	INTC1		61H	PGAC1	
22H	INTC2		62H	PGACS	
23H			63H	ADRL	
24H	PB		64H	ADRM	
25H	PBC		65H	ADRH	
26H	PBPU		66H	ADCR0	
27H	PAS0		67H	ADCR1	
28H	PAS1		68H	ADCS	
29H	SLEDC		69H		
2AH			6AH		
2BH	IFS		6BH		
2CH	PSCR		6CH		
2DH	TB0C		6DH		
2EH	TB1C		6EH	VBOPC	
2FH	EEAL		6FH	DSDACC	
30H	EEAH		70H	DSDAH	
31H	EED		71H	DSDAL	
32H	CTMC0		72H	LNOPC	
33H	CTMC1		73H		
34H	CTMDL		74H		
35H	CTMDH		75H		
36H	CTMAL		76H		
37H	CTMAH		77H		
38H	PTMC0		78H		
39H	PTMC1		79H	PCRL	
3AH	PTMDL		7AH	PCRH	
3BH	PTMDH		7BH	CRCCR	
3CH	PTMAL		7CH	CRCIN	
3DH	PTMAH		7DH	CRCDL	
3EH	PTMRPL		7EH	CRCDH	
3FH	PTMRPH		7FH		

□ : Unused, read as 00H

▨ : Reserved, cannot be changed

Special Purpose Data Memory Structure

Special Function Register Description

Most of the Special Function Register details will be described in the relevant functional sections, however several registers require a separate description in this section.

Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2

The Indirect Addressing Registers, IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2, although having their locations in normal RAM register space, do not actually physically exist as normal registers. The method of indirect addressing for RAM data manipulation uses these Indirect Addressing Registers and Memory Pointers, in contrast to direct memory addressing, where the actual memory address is specified. Actions on the IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2 registers will result in no actual read or write operation to these registers but rather to the memory location specified by their corresponding Memory Pointers, MP0, MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H. Acting as a pair, IAR0 and MP0 can together access data only from Sector 0 while the IAR1 register together with the MP1L/MP1H register pair and IAR2 register together with the MP2L/MP2H register pair can access data from any Data Memory Sector. As the Indirect Addressing Registers are not physically implemented, reading the Indirect Addressing Registers will return a result of “00H” and writing to the registers will result in no operation.

Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1L/MP1H, MP2L/MP2H

Five Memory Pointers, known as MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L and MP2H, are provided. These Memory Pointers are physically implemented in the Data Memory and can be manipulated in the same way as normal registers providing a convenient way with which to address and track data. When any operation to the relevant Indirect Addressing Registers is carried out, the actual address that the microcontrollers is directed to is the address specified by the related Memory Pointer. MP0, together with Indirect Addressing Register, IAR0, are used to access data from Sector 0, while MP1L/MP1H together with IAR1 and MP2L/MP2H together with IAR2 are used to access data from all data sectors according to the corresponding MP1H or MP2H register. Direct Addressing can be used in all data sectors using the extended instruction which can address all available data memory space.

The following example shows how to clear a section of four Data Memory locations already defined as locations `adres1` to `adres4`.

Indirect Addressing Program Example

Example 1

```
data .section 'data'
adres1 db ?
adres2 db ?
adres3 db ?
adres4 db ?
block db ?
code .section at 0 code
org 00h
start:
mov a,04h           ; setup size of block
mov block,a
mov a,offset adres1 ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
mov mp0,a          ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
clr IAR0           ; clear the data at address defined by MP0
inc mp0            ; increment memory pointer
sdz block          ; check if last memory location has been cleared
jmp loop
continue:
```

Example 2

```

data .section 'data'
adres1 db ?
adres2 db ?
adres3 db ?
adres4 db ?
block db ?
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
mov a,04h          ; setup size of block
mov block,a
mov a,01h          ; setup the memory sector
mov mplh,a
mov a,offset adres1 ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
mov mpll,a         ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
clr IAR1           ; clear the data at address defined by MP1L
inc mpll           ; increment memory pointer MP1L
sdz block          ; check if last memory location has been cleared
jmp loop
continue:
:

```

The important point to note here is that in the example shown above, no reference is made to specific RAM addresses.

Direct Addressing Program Example using extended instructions

```

data .section 'data'
temp db ?
code .section at 0 code
org 00h
start:
lmov a,[m]         ; move [m] data to acc
lsub a,[m+1]       ; compare [m] and [m+1] data
snz c              ; [m]>[m+1]?
jmp continue      ; no
lmov a,[m]         ; yes, exchange [m] and [m+1] data
mov temp,a
lmov a,[m+1]
lmov [m],a
mov a,temp
lmov [m+1],a
continue:
:

```

Note: Here “m” is a data memory address located in any data memory sectors. For example, m=1F0H, it indicates address 0F0H in Sector 1.

Accumulator – ACC

The Accumulator is central to the operation of any microcontroller and is closely related with operations carried out by the ALU. The Accumulator is the place where all intermediate results from the ALU are stored. Without the Accumulator it would be necessary to write the result of each calculation or logical operation such as addition, subtraction, shift, etc., to the Data Memory resulting in higher programming and timing overheads. Data transfer operations usually involve the temporary storage function of the Accumulator; for example, when transferring data between one user-defined register and another, it is necessary to do this by passing the data through the Accumulator as no direct transfer between two registers is permitted.

Program Counter Low Register – PCL

To provide additional program control functions, the low byte of the Program Counter is made accessible to programmers by locating it within the Special Purpose area of the Data Memory. By manipulating this register, direct jumps to other program locations are easily implemented. Loading a value directly into this PCL register will cause a jump to the specified Program Memory location; however, as the register is only 8-bit wide, only jumps within the current Program Memory page are permitted. When such operations are used, note that a dummy cycle will be inserted.

Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH

These three special function registers are used to control operation of the look-up table which is stored in the Program Memory. The TBLP and TBHP registers are the table pointer pair and indicates the location where the table data is located. Their value must be setup before any table read instructions are executed. Their value can be changed, for example using the “INC” or “DEC” instructions, allowing for easy table data pointing and reading. TBLH is the location where the high order byte of the table data is stored after a table read data instruction has been executed. Note that the lower order table data byte is transferred to a user defined location.

Status Register – STATUS

This 8-bit register contains the zero flag (Z), carry flag (C), auxiliary carry flag (AC), overflow flag (OV), SC flag, CZ flag, power down flag (PDF), and watchdog time-out flag (TO). These arithmetic/logical operation and system management flags are used to record the status and operation of the microcontrollers.

With the exception of the TO and PDF flags, bits in the status register can be altered by instructions like most other registers. Any data written into the status register will not change the TO or PDF flag. In addition, operations related to the status register may give different results due to the different instruction operations. The TO flag can be affected only by a system power-up, a WDT time-out or by executing the “CLR WDT” or “HALT” instruction. The PDF flag is affected only by executing the “HALT” or “CLR WDT” instruction or during a system power-up.

The Z, OV, AC, C, SC and CZ flags generally reflect the status of the latest operations.

- C is set if an operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation; otherwise C is cleared. C is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.
- AC is set if an operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction; otherwise AC is cleared.
- Z is set if the result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero; otherwise Z is cleared.
- OV is set if an operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit, or vice versa; otherwise OV is cleared.

- PDF is cleared by a system power-up or executing the “CLR WDT” instruction. PDF is set by executing the “HALT” instruction.
- TO is cleared by a system power-up or executing the “CLR WDT” or “HALT” instruction. TO is set by a WDT time-out.
- SC is the result of the “XOR” operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the current instruction operation result.
- CZ is the operational result of different flags for different instructions. Refer to register definitions for more details.

In addition, on entering an interrupt sequence or executing a subroutine call, the status register will not be pushed onto the stack automatically. If the contents of the status registers are important and if the subroutine can corrupt the status register, precautions must be taken to correctly save it.

• **STATUS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SC	CZ	TO	PDF	OV	Z	AC	C
R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	0	0	x	x	x	x

“x”: unknown

- Bit 7 **SC:** The result of the “XOR” operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the instruction operation result
- Bit 6 **CZ:** The operational result of different flags for different instructions
For SUB/SUBM/LSUB/LSUBM instructions, the CZ flag is equal to the Z flag.
For SBC/ SBCM/ LSBC/ LSBCM instructions, the CZ flag is the “AND” operation result which is performed by the previous operation CZ flag and current operation zero flag. For other instructions, the CZ flag will not be affected.
- Bit 5 **TO:** Watchdog Time-out flag
0: After power up or executing the “CLR WDT” or “HALT” instruction
1: A watchdog time-out occurred
- Bit 4 **PDF:** Power down flag
0: After power up or executing the “CLR WDT” instruction
1: By executing the “HALT” instruction
- Bit 3 **OV:** Overflow flag
0: No overflow
1: An operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit or vice versa
- Bit 2 **Z:** Zero flag
0: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is not zero
1: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero
- Bit 1 **AC:** Auxiliary flag
0: No auxiliary carry
1: An operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles, in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction
- Bit 0 **C:** Carry flag
0: No carry-out
1: An operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation
The “C” flag is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.

EEPROM Data Memory

The device contains an area of internal EEPROM Data Memory. EEPROM is by its nature a non-volatile form of re-programmable memory, with data retention even when its power supply is removed. By incorporating this kind of data memory, a whole new host of application possibilities are made available to the designer. The availability of EEPROM storage allows information such as product identification numbers, calibration values, specific user data, system setup data or other product information to be stored directly within the product microcontroller. The process of reading and writing data to the EEPROM memory has been reduced to a very trivial affair.

EEPROM Data Memory Structure

The EEPROM Data Memory capacity is 512×8 bits for the device. Unlike the Program Memory and RAM Data Memory, the EEPROM Data Memory is not directly mapped into memory space and is therefore not directly addressable in the same way as the other types of memory. Read and write operations to the EEPROM are carried out in either the byte mode or page mode determined by the mode selection bit, MODE, in the control register, EEC.

EEPROM Registers

Four registers control the overall operation of the internal EEPROM Data Memory. These are the address registers, EEAL and EEAH, the data register, EED and a single control register, EEC. As the EEAL, EEAH and EED registers are located in Sector 0, they can be directly accessed in the same way as any other Special Function Register. The EEC register, however, being located in Sector 1, can only be read from or written to indirectly using the MP1H/MP1L or MP2H/MP2L Memory Pointer pair and Indirect Addressing Register, IAR1 or IAR2. Because the EEC control register is located at address 40H in Sector 1, the Memory Pointer low byte register, MP1L or MP2L, must first be set to the value 40H and the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, set to the value, 01H, before any operations on the EEC register are executed.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EEAL	EEAL7	EEAL6	EEAL5	EEAL4	EEAL3	EEAL2	EEAL1	EEAL0
EEAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	EEAH0
EED	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
EEC	EWERTS	EREN	ER	MODE	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD

EEPROM Register List

• EEAL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	EEAL7	EEAL6	EEAL5	EEAL4	EEAL3	EEAL2	EEAL1	EEAL0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **EEAL7~EEAL0**: Data EEPROM address low byte register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 Data EEPROM address bit 7 ~ bit 0

• EEAH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	EEAH0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0

Bit 7~1 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 0 **EEAH0**: Data EEPROM address high byte register bit 0
Data EEPROM address bit 8

• EED Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Data EEPROM data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• EEC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	EWERTS	EREN	ER	MODE	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **EWERTS**: Data EEPROM Erase time and Write time selection
 0: Erase time is 3.2ms (t_{EEER}) / Write time is 2.2ms (t_{EEWR})
 1: Erase time is 3.7ms (t_{EEER}) / Write time is 3.0ms (t_{EEWR})

Bit 6 **EREN**: Data EEPROM erase enable
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

This bit is used to enable Data EEPROM erase function and must be set high before Data EEPROM erase operations are carried out. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by hardware after the erase cycle has finished. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit data EEPROM erase operations.

Bit 5 **ER**: Data EEPROM erase control
 0: Erase cycle has finished
 1: Activate an erase cycle

This is the Data EEPROM Erase Control Bit. When this bit is set high by the application program, an erase cycle will be activated. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by hardware after the erase cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the EREN has not first been set high.

Bit 4 **MODE**: Data EEPROM operation mode selection
 0: Byte operation mode
 1: Page operation mode

This is the EEPROM operation mode selection bit. When the bit is set high by the application program, the Page write, erase or read function will be selected. Otherwise, the byte write or read function will be selected. The EEPROM page buffer size is 16 bytes.

Bit 3 **WREN**: Data EEPROM write enable
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

This is the Data EEPROM Write Enable Bit, which must be set high before Data EEPROM write operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM write operations. Note that the WREN bit will automatically be cleared to zero after the write operation is finished.

- Bit 2 **WR**: Data EEPROM write control
 0: Write cycle has finished
 1: Activate a write cycle
 This is the Data EEPROM Write Control Bit. When this bit is set high by the application program, a write cycle will be activated. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by hardware after the write cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the WREN has not first been set high.
- Bit 1 **RDEN**: Data EEPROM read enable
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
 This is the Data EEPROM Read Enable Bit, which must be set high before Data EEPROM read operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM read operations.
- Bit 0 **RD**: Data EEPROM read control
 0: Read cycle has finished
 1: Activate a read cycle
 This is the Data EEPROM Read Control Bit. When this bit is set high by the application program, a read cycle will be activated. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by hardware after the read cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the RDEN has not first been set high.

- Note: 1. The EREN, ER, WREN, WR, RDEN and RD cannot be set to “1” at the same time in one instruction. The WR and RD cannot be set to “1” at the same time.
2. Ensure that the f_{SUB} clock is stable before executing the erase or write operation.
3. Ensure that the erase or write operation is totally complete before changing the contents of the EEPROM related registers or activating the IAP function.

Read Operation from the EEPROM

Reading data from the EEPROM can be implemented by two modes for this device, byte read mode or page read mode, which is controlled by the EEPROM operation mode selection bit, MODE, in the EEC register.

Byte Read Mode

The EEPROM byte read operation can be executed when the mode selection bit, MODE, is cleared to zero. For a byte read operation the desired EEPROM address should first be placed in the EEAH and EEAL registers, as well as the read enable bit, RDEN, in the EEC register should be set high to enable the read function. Then setting the RD bit high will initiate the EEPROM byte read operation. Note that setting the RD bit high only will not initiate a read operation if the RDEN bit is not set high. When the read cycle terminates, the RD bit will automatically be cleared to zero and the EEPROM data can be read from the EED register. The data will remain in the EED register until another read or write operation is executed. The application program can poll the RD bit to determine when the data is valid for reading.

Page Read Mode

The EEPROM page read operation can be executed when the mode selection bit, MODE, is set high. The page size can be up to 16 bytes for the page read operation. For a page read operation the start address of the desired EEPROM page should first be placed in the EEAH and EEAL registers, as well as the read enable bit, RDEN, in the EEC register should be set high to enable the read function. Then setting the RD bit high will initiate the EEPROM page read operation. Note that setting the RD bit high only will not initiate a read operation if the RDEN bit is not set high. When the current byte read cycle terminates, the RD bit will automatically be cleared to zero indicating that the EEPROM data can be read from the EED register and then the current address will be incremented by one by hardware. The data which is stored in the next EEPROM address can continuously be read when

the RD bit is again set high without reconfiguring the EEPROM address and RDEN control bit. The application program can poll the RD bit to determine when the data is valid for reading.

The EEPROM address higher 5 bits are used to specify the desired page location while the lower 4 bits are used to point to the actual address. In the page read operation mode the lower 4-bit address value will automatically be incremented by one. However, the higher 5-bit address value will not be incremented by hardware. When the EEPROM address lower 4-bit value which is internally incremented by one in the page mode reaches the page boundary, known as 0FH, the EEPROM address lower 4-bit value will stop at 0FH. The EEPROM address will not “roll over”.

Page Erase Operation to the EEPROM

The EEPROM page erase operation can be executed when the mode selection bit, MODE, is set high. The EEPROM is capable of a 16-byte page erase. The internal page buffer will be cleared by hardware after power on reset. When the EEPROM erase enable control bit, namely EREN, is changed from “1” to “0”, the internal page buffer will also be cleared. Note that when the EREN bit is changed from “0” to “1”, the internal page buffer will not be cleared. The EEPROM address higher 5 bits are used to specify the desired page location while the lower 4 bits are used to point to the actual address. In the page erase operation mode the lower 4-bit address value will automatically be incremented by one after each dummy data byte is written into the EED register. However, the higher 5-bit address value will not be incremented by hardware. When the EEPROM address lower 4-bit value which is internally incremented by one in the page mode reaches the page boundary, known as 0FH, the EEPROM address lower 4-bit value will stop at 0FH. The EEPROM address will not “roll over”.

For page erase operations the start address of the desired EEPROM page should first be placed in the EEAH and EEAL registers and the dummy data to be written should be placed in the EED register. The maximum data length for a page is 16 bytes. Note that the write operation to the EED register is used to tag address, it must be implemented to determine which addresses to be erased. When the page dummy data is completely written, then the EREN bit in the EEC register should be set high to enable erase operations and the ER bit must be immediately set high to initiate the EEPROM erase process. These two instructions must be executed in two consecutive instruction cycles to activate an erase operation successfully. The global interrupt enable bit EMI should also first be cleared before implementing an erase operation and then set again after a valid erase activation procedure has completed.

As the EEPROM erase cycle is controlled using an internal timer whose operation is asynchronous to microcontroller system clock, a certain time will elapse before the data will have been erased from the EEPROM. Detecting when the erase cycle has finished can be implemented either by polling the ER bit in the EEC register or by using the EEPROM interrupt. When the erase cycle terminates, the ER bit will be automatically cleared to zero by the microcontroller, informing the user that the page data has been erased. The application program can therefore poll the ER bit to determine when the erase cycle has ended. After the erase operation is finished, the EREN bit will be cleared to zero by hardware. The Data EEPROM erased page content will all be zero after a page erase operation.

Write Operation to the EEPROM

Writing data to the EEPROM can be implemented by two modes for this device, byte write mode or page write mode, which is controlled by the EEPROM operation mode selection bit, MODE, in the EEC register.

Byte Write Mode

The EEPROM byte write operation can be executed when the mode selection bit, MODE, is cleared to zero. For byte write operations the desired EEPROM address should first be placed in the EEAH

and EEAL registers and the data to be written should be placed in the EED register. To write data to the EEPROM, the write enable bit, WREN, in the EEC register must first be set high to enable the write function. After this, the WR bit in the EEC register must be immediately set high to initiate a write cycle. These two instructions must be executed in two consecutive instruction cycles to activate a write operation successfully. The global interrupt bit EMI should also first be cleared before implementing any write operations, and then set high again after a valid write activation procedure has completed. Note that setting the WR bit high only will not initiate a write cycle if the WREN bit is not set.

As the EEPROM write cycle is controlled using an internal timer whose operation is asynchronous to microcontroller system clock, a certain time will elapse before the data will have been written into the EEPROM. Detecting when the write cycle has finished can be implemented either by polling the WR bit in the EEC register or by using the EEPROM interrupt. When the write cycle terminates, the WR bit will be automatically cleared to zero by the microcontroller, informing the user that the data has been written to the EEPROM. The application program can therefore poll the WR bit to determine when the write cycle has ended. After the write operation is finished, the WREN bit will be cleared to zero by hardware. Note that a byte erase operation will automatically be executed before a byte write operation is successfully activated.

Page Write Mode

Before a page write operation is executed, it is important to ensure that a relevant page erase operation has been successfully executed. The EEPROM page write operation can be executed when the mode selection bit, MODE, is set high. The EEPROM is capable of a 16-byte page write. The internal page buffer will be cleared by hardware after power on reset. When the EEPROM write enable control bit, namely WREN, is changed from “1” to “0”, the internal page buffer will also be cleared. Note that when the WREN bit is changed from “0” to “1”, the internal page buffer will not be cleared. A page write is initiated in the same way as a byte write initiation except that the EEPROM data can be written up to 16 bytes. The EEPROM address higher 5 bits are used to specify the desired page location while the lower 4 bits are used to point to the actual address. In the page write operation mode the lower 4-bit address value will automatically be incremented by one after each data byte is written into the EED register. However, the higher 5-bit address value will not be incremented by hardware. When the EEPROM address lower 4-bit value which is internally incremented by one in the page mode reaches the page boundary, known as 0FH, the EEPROM address lower 4-bit value will stop at 0FH. The EEPROM address will not “roll over”. At this point any data write operations to the EED register will be invalid.

For page write operations the start address of the desired EEPROM page should first be placed in the EEAH and EEAL registers and the data to be written should be placed in the EED register. The maximum data length for a page is 16 bytes. Note that when a data byte is written into the EED register, then the data in the EED register will be loaded into the internal page buffer and the current address value will automatically be incremented by one. When the page data is completely written into the page buffer, then the WREN bit in the EEC register should be set high to enable write operations and the WR bit must be immediately set high to initiate the EEPROM write process. These two instructions must be executed in two consecutive instruction cycles to activate a write operation successfully. The global interrupt enable bit EMI should also first be cleared before implementing any write operations, and then set high again after a valid write activation procedure has completed. Note that setting the WR bit high only will not initiate a write cycle if the WREN bit is not set.

As the EEPROM write cycle is controlled using an internal timer whose operation is asynchronous to microcontroller system clock, a certain time will elapse before the data will have been written into the EEPROM. Detecting when the write cycle has finished can be implemented either by polling the WR bit in the EEC register or by using the EEPROM interrupt. When the write cycle terminates, the WR bit will be automatically cleared to zero by the microcontroller, informing the user that the data has been written to the EEPROM. The application program can therefore poll the WR bit to determine when the write cycle has ended. After the write operation is finished, the WREN bit will be cleared to zero by hardware.

Write Protection

Protection against inadvertent write operation is provided in several ways. After the device is powered-on the Write Enable bit in the control register will be cleared preventing any write operations. Also at power-on the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, will be reset to zero, which means that Data Memory Sector 0 will be selected. As the EEPROM control register is located in Sector 1, this adds a further measure of protection against spurious write operations. During normal program operation, ensuring that the Write Enable bit in the control register is cleared will safeguard against incorrect write operations.

EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM erase or write interrupt is generated when an EEPROM erase or write cycle has ended. The EEPROM interrupt must first be enabled by setting the DEE bit in the relevant interrupt register. However as the EEPROM is contained within a Multi-function Interrupt, the associated multi-function interrupt enable bit must also be set. When an EEPROM erase or write cycle ends, the DEF request flag and its associated multi-function interrupt request flag will both be set. If the global, EEPROM and Multi-function interrupts are enabled and the stack is not full, a jump to the associated Multi-function Interrupt vector will take place. When the interrupt is serviced only the Multi-function interrupt flag will be automatically reset, the EEPROM interrupt flag must be manually reset by the application program. More details can be obtained in the Interrupts section.

Programming Considerations

Care must be taken that data is not inadvertently written to the EEPROM. Protection can be enhanced by ensuring that the Write Enable bit is normally cleared to zero when not writing. Also the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, could be normally cleared to zero as this would inhibit access to Sector 1 where the EEPROM control register exists. Although certainly not necessary, consideration might be given in the application program to the checking of the validity of new write data by a simple read back process.

When writing data the WR bit must be set high immediately after the WREN bit has been set high, to ensure the write cycle executes correctly. The global interrupt bit EMI should also be cleared before a write or erase cycle is executed and then set again after a valid write or erase activation procedure has completed. Note that the device should not enter the IDLE or SLEEP mode until the EEPROM read, erase or write operation is totally complete. Otherwise, the EEPROM read, erase or write operation will fail.

Programming Examples

Reading a Data Byte from the EEPROM – Polling Method

```
MOV A, 040H           ; setup memory pointer low byte MP1L
MOV MP1L, A           ; MP1 points to EEC register
MOV A, 01H            ; setup memory pointer high byte MP1H
MOV MP1H, A
CLR IAR1.4           ; clear MODE bit, select byte operation mode
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_H ; user defined high byte address
MOV EEAH, A
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_L ; user defined low byte address
MOV EEAL, A
SET IAR1.1           ; set RDEN bit, enable read operations
SET IAR1.0           ; start Read Cycle - set RD bit
BACK:
SZ IAR1.0            ; check for read cycle end
JMP BACK
CLR IAR1              ; disable EEPROM read function
CLR MP1H
MOV A, EED            ; move read data to register
MOV READ_DATA, A
```

Reading a Data Page from the EEPROM – Polling Method

```
MOV A, 040H           ; setup memory pointer low byte MP1L
MOV MP1L, A           ; MP1 points to EEC register
MOV A, 01H            ; setup memory pointer high byte MP1H
MOV MP1H, A
SET IAR1.4           ; set MODE bit, select page operation mode
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_H ; user defined high byte address
MOV EEAH, A
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_L ; user defined low byte address
MOV EEAL, A
SET IAR1.1           ; set RDEN bit, enable read operations
; ~~~~ The data length can be up to 16 bytes (Start) ~~~~
CALL READ
CALL READ
:
:
JMP PAGE_READ_FINISH
; ~~~~ The data length can be up to 16 bytes (End) ~~~~
READ:
SET IAR1.0           ; start Read Cycle - set RD bit
BACK:
SZ IAR1.0            ; check for read cycle end
JMP BACK
MOV A, EED            ; move read data to register
MOV READ_DATA, A
RET
:
PAGE_READ_FINISH:
CLR IAR1              ; disable EEPROM read function
CLR MP1H
```

Erasing a Data Page to the EEPROM – Polling Method

```
MOV A, 040H          ; setup memory pointer low byte MP1L
MOV MP1L, A          ; MP1 points to EEC register
MOV A, 01H           ; setup memory pointer high byte MP1H
MOV MP1H, A
SET IAR1.4           ; set MODE bit, select page operation mode
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_H ; user defined high byte address
MOV EEAH, A
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_L ; user defined low byte address
MOV EEAL, A
; ~~~~ The data length can be up to 16 bytes (Start) ~~~~
CALL WRITE_BUF
CALL WRITE_BUF
:
:
JMP Erase_START
; ~~~~ The data length can be up to 16 bytes (End) ~~~~
WRITE_BUF:
MOV A, EEPROM_DATA   ; user defined data, erase mode don't care data value
MOV EED, A
RET
:
Erase_START:
CLR EMI
SET IAR1.6           ; set EREN bit, enable erase operations
SET IAR1.5           ; start Erase Cycle - set ER bit - executed immediately
; after setting EREN bit

SET EMI
BACK:
SZ IAR1.5            ; check for erase cycle end
JMP BACK
CLR MP1H
```

Writing a Data Byte to the EEPROM – Polling Method

```
MOV A, 040H          ; setup memory pointer low byte MP1L
MOV MP1L, A          ; MP1 points to EEC register
MOV A, 01H           ; setup memory pointer high byte MP1H
MOV MP1H, A
CLR IAR1.4           ; clear MODE bit, select byte operation mode
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_H ; user defined high byte address
MOV EEAH, A
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_L ; user defined low byte address
MOV EEAL, A
MOV A, EEPROM_DATA   ; user defined data
MOV EED, A
CLR EMI
SET IAR1.3           ; set WREN bit, enable write operations
SET IAR1.2           ; start Write Cycle - set WR bit - executed immediately
; after setting WREN bit

SET EMI
BACK:
SZ IAR1.2            ; check for write cycle end
JMP BACK
CLR MP1H
```

Writing a Data Page to the EEPROM – Polling Method

```

MOV A, 040H           ; setup memory pointer low byte MP1L
MOV MP1L, A          ; MP1 points to EEC register
MOV A, 01H           ; setup memory pointer high byte MP1H
MOV MP1H, A
SET IAR1.4           ; set MODE bit, select page operation mode
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_H ; user defined high byte address
MOV EEAH, A
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES_L ; user defined low byte address
MOV EEAL, A
; ~~~~ The data length can be up to 16 bytes (Start) ~~~~
CALL WRITE_BUF
CALL WRITE_BUF
:
:
JMP WRITE_START
; ~~~~ The data length can be up to 16 bytes (End) ~~~~
WRITE_BUF:
MOV A, EEPROM_DATA   ; user defined data
MOV EED, A
RET
:
WRITE_START:
CLR EMI
SET IAR1.3           ; set WREN bit, enable write operations
SET IAR1.2           ; start Write Cycle - set WR bit - executed immediately
; after setting WREN bit

SET EMI
BACK:
SZ IAR1.2            ; check for write cycle end
JMP BACK
CLR MP1H
    
```

Oscillators

Various oscillator types offer the user a wide range of functions according to their various application requirements. The flexible features of the oscillator functions ensure that the best optimisation can be achieved in terms of speed and power saving. Oscillator selections and operation are selected through a combination of configuration options and relevant control registers.

Oscillator Overview

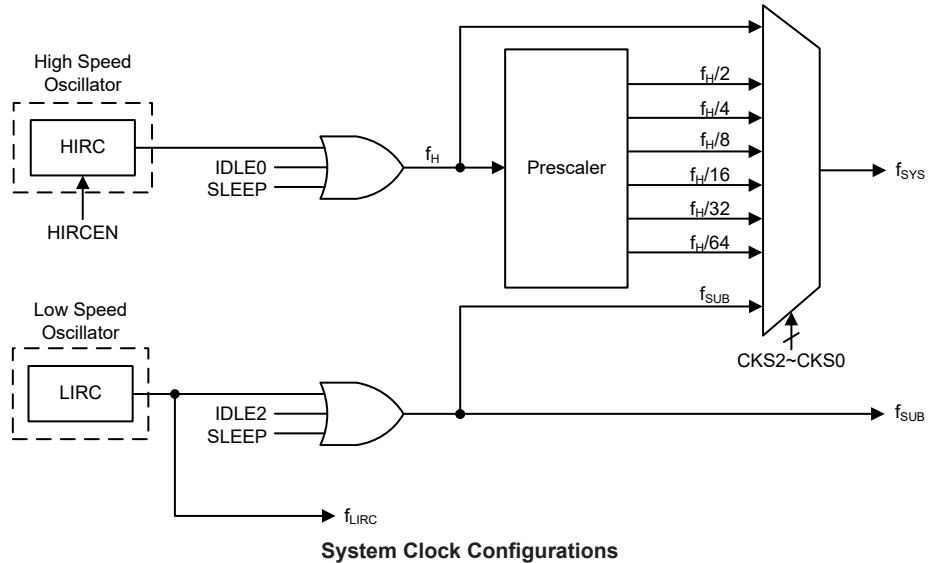
In addition to being the source of the main system clock the oscillators also provide clock sources for the Watchdog Timer and Time Base Interrupts. Two fully integrated internal oscillators, requiring no external components, are provided to form a wide range of both fast and slow system oscillators. The higher frequency oscillators provide higher performance but carry with it the disadvantage of higher power requirements, while the opposite is of course true for the lower frequency oscillators. With the capability of dynamically switching between fast and slow system clock, the device has the flexibility to optimize the performance/power ratio, a feature especially important in power sensitive portable applications.

Type	Name	Frequency
Internal High Speed RC	HIRC	4/8/12MHz
Internal Low Speed RC	LIRC	32kHz

Oscillator Types

System Clock Configurations

There are two oscillator sources, a high speed oscillator and a low speed oscillator. The high speed oscillator is the internal 4/8/12MHz RC oscillator, HIRC. The low speed oscillator is the internal 32kHz RC oscillator, LIRC. Selecting whether the low or high speed oscillator is used as the system oscillator is implemented using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register and as the system clock can be dynamically selected.



Internal High Speed RC Oscillator – HIRC

The internal RC oscillator is a fully integrated system oscillator requiring no external components. The internal RC oscillator has three fixed frequencies of 4MHz, 8MHz and 12MHz, which are selected by the HIRC1~HIRC0 bits in the HIRCC register. These bits must also be setup to match the selected configuration option frequency to ensure that the HIRC frequency accuracy specified in the A.C. Characteristics is achieved. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised.

Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC

The Internal 32kHz System Oscillator is the low frequency oscillator. It is a fully integrated RC oscillator with a typical frequency of 32kHz, requiring no external components for its implementation. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised.

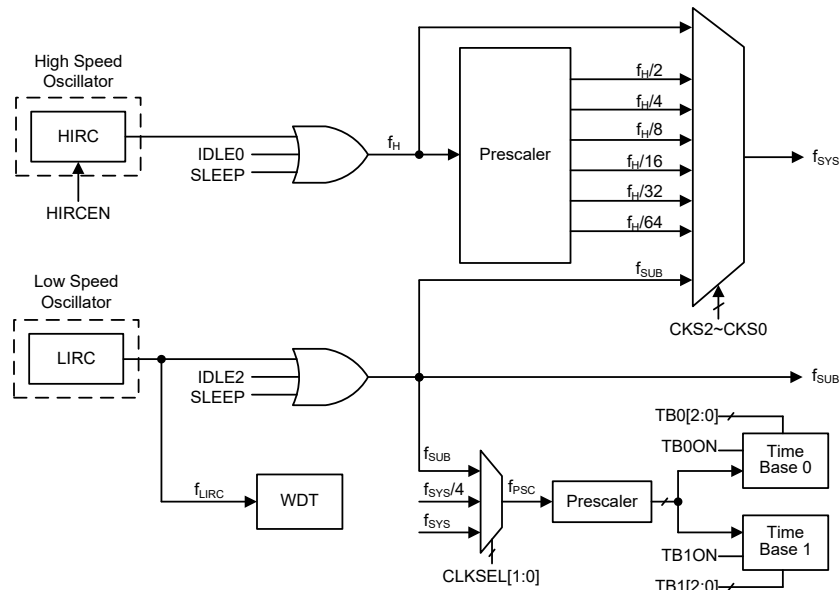
Operating Modes and System Clocks

Present day applications require that their microcontrollers have high performance but often still demand that they consume as little power as possible, conflicting requirements that are especially true in battery powered portable applications. The fast clocks required for high performance will by their nature increase current consumption and of course vice versa, lower speed clocks reduce current consumption. As Holtek has provided the device with both high and low speed clock sources and the means to switch between them dynamically, the user can optimise the operation of their microcontroller to achieve the best performance/power ratio.

System Clocks

The device has many different clock sources for both the CPU and peripheral function operation. By providing the user with a wide range of clock options using register programming, a clock system can be configured to obtain maximum application performance.

The main system clock, can come from either a high frequency, f_H , or low frequency, f_{SUB} , source, and is selected using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. The high speed system clock is sourced from the HIRC oscillator. The low speed system clock source is sourced from the LIRC oscillator. The other choice, which is a divided version of the high speed system oscillator has a range of $f_H/2 \sim f_H/64$.



Device Clock Configurations

Note: When the system clock source f_{SYS} is switched to f_{SUB} from f_H , the high speed oscillator can be stopped to conserve the power or continue to oscillate to provide the clock source, $f_H \sim f_H/64$, for peripheral circuit to use, which is determined by configuring the corresponding high speed oscillator enable control bit.

System Operation Modes

There are six different modes of operation for the microcontroller, each one with its own special characteristics and which can be chosen according to the specific performance and power requirements of the application. There are two modes allowing normal operation of the microcontroller, the FAST Mode and SLOW Mode. The remaining four modes, the SLEEP, IDLE0, IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode are used when the microcontroller CPU is switched off to conserve power.

Operation Mode	CPU	Register Setting			f _{sys}	f _H	f _{SUB}	f _{LIRC}
		FHIDEN	FSIDEN	CKS2~CKS0				
FAST	On	x	x	000~110	f _H ~f _H /64	On	On	On
SLOW	On	x	x	111	f _{SUB}	On/Off ⁽¹⁾	On	On
IDLE0	Off	0	1	000~110	Off	Off	On	On
				111	On			
IDLE1	Off	1	1	xxx	On	On	On	On
IDLE2	Off	1	0	000~110	On	On	Off	On
				111	Off			
SLEEP	Off	0	0	xxx	Off	Off	Off	On/Off ⁽²⁾

"x": Don't care

- Note: 1. The f_H clock will be switched on or off by configuring the corresponding oscillator enable bit in the SLOW mode.
2. The f_{LIRC} clock can be switched on or off which is controlled by the WDT function being enabled or disabled in the SLEEP mode.

FAST Mode

This is one of the main operating modes where the microcontroller has all of its functions operational and where the system clock is provided by one of the high speed oscillators. This mode operates allowing the microcontroller to operate normally with a clock source will come from the HIRC oscillator. The high speed oscillator will however first be divided by a ratio ranging from 1 to 64, the actual ratio being selected by the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. Although a high speed oscillator is used, running the microcontroller at a divided clock ratio reduces the operating current.

SLOW Mode

This is also a mode where the microcontroller operates normally although now with a slower speed clock source. The clock source used will be from f_{SUB}. The f_{SUB} clock is derived from the LIRC oscillator.

SLEEP Mode

The SLEEP Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits are low. In the SLEEP mode the CPU will be stopped. The f_{SUB} clock provided to the peripheral function will also be stopped, too. However the f_{LIRC} clock will continue to operate if the WDT function is enabled by the WDTC register.

IDLE0 Mode

The IDLE0 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is low and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high. In the IDLE0 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the low speed oscillator will be turned on to drive some peripheral functions.

IDLE1 Mode

The IDLE1 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high. In the IDLE1 Mode the CPU will be switched off but both the high and low speed oscillators will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

IDLE2 Mode

The IDLE2 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is low. In the IDLE2 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the high speed oscillator will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

Control Registers

The registers, SCC and HIRCC are used to control the system clock and the corresponding oscillator configurations.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SCC	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	—	—	—	FHIDEN	FSIDEN
HIRCC	—	—	—	—	HIRC1	HIRC0	HIRCF	HIRCEN

System Operating Mode Control Register List

• SCC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	—	—	—	FHIDEN	FSIDEN
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~5 **CKS2~CKS0**: System clock selection

- 000: f_H
- 001: $f_H/2$
- 010: $f_H/4$
- 011: $f_H/8$
- 100: $f_H/16$
- 101: $f_H/32$
- 110: $f_H/64$
- 111: f_{SUB}

These three bits are used to select which clock is used as the system clock source. In addition to the system clock source directly derived from f_H or f_{SUB} , a divided version of the high speed system oscillator can also be chosen as the system clock source.

Bit 4~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1 **FHIDEN**: High Frequency oscillator control when CPU is switched off

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

This bit is used to control whether the high speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing a “HALT” instruction.

Bit 0 **FSIDEN**: Low Frequency oscillator control when CPU is switched off

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

This bit is used to control whether the low speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing a “HALT” instruction.

Note: A certain delay is required before the relevant clock is successfully switched to the target clock source after any clock switching setup using the CKS2~CKS0 bits. A proper delay time must be arranged before executing the following operations which require immediate reaction with the target clock source.

Clock switching delay time = $4 \times t_{SYS} + [0 \sim (1.5 \times t_{CURR} + 0.5 \times t_{TAR})]$, where t_{CURR} indicates the current clock period, t_{TAR} indicates the target clock period and t_{SYS} indicates the current system clock period.

• HIRCC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	HIRC1	HIRC0	HIRCF	HIRCEN
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	1

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

- Bit 3~2 **HIRC1~HIRC0:** HIRC frequency selection
 00: 4MHz
 01: 8MHz
 10: 12MHz
 11: 4MHz

When the HIRC oscillator is enabled or the HIRC frequency selection is changed by application program, the clock frequency will automatically be changed after the HIRCF flag is set high.

It is recommended that the HIRC frequency selected by these two bits should be the same with the frequency determined by the configuration option to achieve the HIRC frequency accuracy specified in the A.C. Characteristics.

- Bit 1 **HIRCF:** HIRC oscillator stable flag
 0: HIRC unstable
 1: HIRC stable

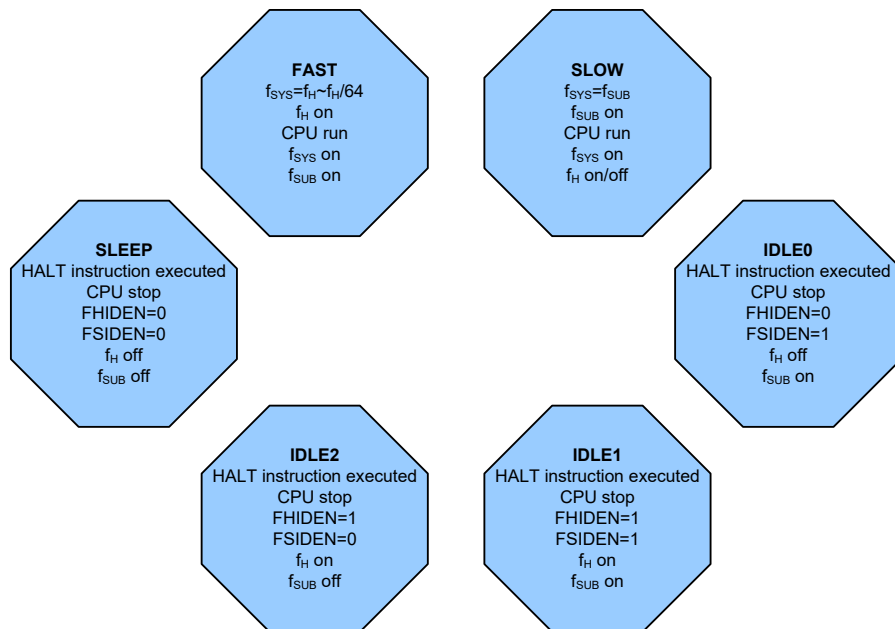
This bit is used to indicate whether the HIRC oscillator is stable or not. When the HIRCEN bit is set high to enable the HIRC oscillator or the HIRC frequency selection is changed by application program, the HIRCF bit will first be cleared to zero and then set high after the HIRC oscillator is stable.

- Bit 0 **HIRCEN:** HIRC oscillator enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Operating Mode Switching

The device can switch between operating modes dynamically allowing the user to select the best performance/power ratio for the present task in hand. In this way microcontroller operations that do not require high performance can be executed using slower clocks thus requiring less operating current and prolonging battery life in portable applications.

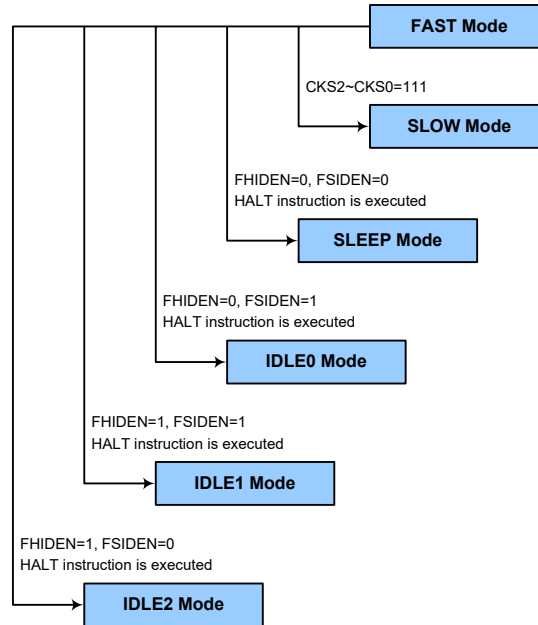
In simple terms, Mode Switching between the FAST Mode and SLOW Mode is executed using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register while Mode Switching from the FAST/SLOW Modes to the SLEEP/IDLE Modes is executed via the HALT instruction. When a HALT instruction is executed, whether the device enters the IDLE Mode or the SLEEP Mode is determined by the condition of the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register.



FAST Mode to SLOW Mode Switching

When running in the FAST Mode, which uses the high speed system oscillator, and therefore consumes more power, the system clock can switch to run in the SLOW Mode by setting the CKS2~CKS0 bits to “111” in the SCC register. This will then use the low speed system oscillator which will consume less power. Users may decide to do this for certain operations which do not require high performance and can subsequently reduce power consumption.

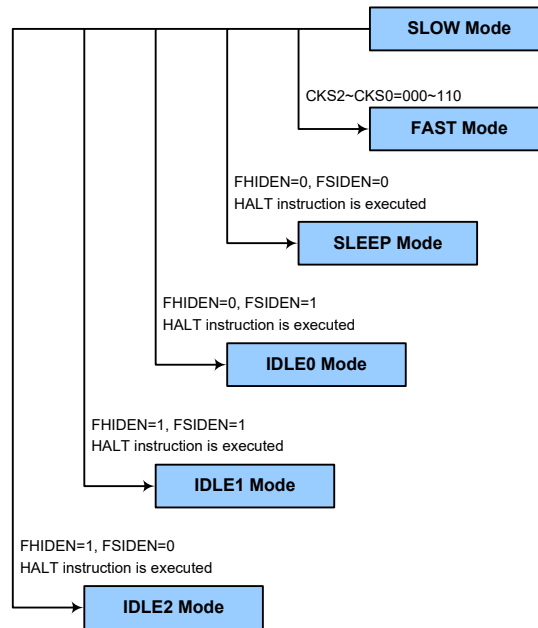
The SLOW Mode is sourced from the LIRC oscillator and therefore requires this oscillator to be stable before full mode switching occurs.



SLOW Mode to FAST Mode Switching

In SLOW mode the system clock is derived from f_{SUB} . When system clock is switched back to the FAST mode from f_{SUB} , the CKS2~CKS0 bits should be set to “000”~“110” and then the system clock will respectively be switched to $f_H \sim f_H/64$.

However, if f_H is not used in SLOW mode and thus switched off, it will take some time to re-oscillate and stabilise when switching to the FAST mode from the SLOW Mode. This is monitored using the HIRCF bit in the HIRCC register. The time duration required for the high speed system oscillator stabilization is specified in the System Start Up Time Characteristics.



Entering the SLEEP Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the SLEEP Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to “0”. In this mode all the clocks and functions will be switched off except the WDT function. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the “HALT” instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

Entering the IDLE0 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE0 Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “0” and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “1”. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_H clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the “HALT” instruction, but the f_{SUB} clock will be on.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

Entering the IDLE1 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE1 Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to “1”. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_{IH} and f_{SUB} clocks will be on but the application program will stop at the “HALT” instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

Entering the IDLE2 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE2 Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “1” and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “0”. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_{IH} clock will be on but the f_{SUB} clock will be off and the application program will stop at the “HALT” instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

Standby Current Considerations

As the main reason for entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode is to keep the current consumption of the device to as low a value as possible, perhaps only in the order of several micro-amps except in the IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode, there are other considerations which must also be taken into account by the circuit designer if the power consumption is to be minimised. Special attention must be made to the I/O pins on the device. All high-impedance input pins must be connected to either a fixed high or low level as any floating input pins could create internal oscillations and result in increased current consumption. This also applies to the device which has different package types, as there may be unbonded pins. These must either be setup as outputs or if setup as inputs must have pull-high resistors connected.

Care must also be taken with the loads, which are connected to I/O pins, which are setup as outputs. These should be placed in a condition in which minimum current is drawn or connected only to external circuits that do not draw current, such as other CMOS inputs. Also note that additional standby current will also be required if the LIRC oscillator has enabled.

In the IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode the high speed oscillator is on, if the peripheral function clock source is derived from the high speed oscillator, the additional standby current will also be perhaps in the order of several hundred micro-amps.

Wake-up

To minimise power consumption the device can enter the SLEEP or any IDLE Mode, where the CPU will be switched off. However, when the device is woken up again, it will take a considerable time for the original system oscillator to restart, stabilise and allow normal operation to resume.

After the system enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, it can be woken up from one of various sources listed as follows:

- An external falling edge on Port A
- A system interrupt
- A WDT overflow

When the device executes the “HALT” instruction, it will enter the SLEEP or IDLE mode and the PDF flag will be set to 1. The PDF flag will be cleared to 0 if the device experiences a system power-up or executes the clear Watchdog Timer instruction. If the system is woken up by a WDT overflow, a Watchdog Timer reset will be initiated and the TO flag will be set to 1. The TO flag is set if a WDT time-out occurs and causes a wake-up that only resets the Program Counter and Stack Pointer, other flags remain in their original status.

Each pin on Port A can be setup using the PAWU register to permit a negative transition on the pin to wake-up the system. When a pin wake-up occurs, the program will resume execution at the instruction following the “HALT” instruction. If the system is woken up by an interrupt, then two possible situations may occur. The first is where the related interrupt is disabled or the interrupt is enabled but the stack is full, in which case the program will resume execution at the instruction following the “HALT” instruction. In this situation, the interrupt which woke-up the device will not be immediately serviced, but will rather be serviced later when the related interrupt is finally enabled or when a stack level becomes free. The other situation is where the related interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, in which case the regular interrupt response takes place. If an interrupt request flag is set high before entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake-up function of the related interrupt will be disabled.

Watchdog Timer

The Watchdog Timer is provided to prevent program malfunctions or sequences from jumping to unknown locations, due to certain uncontrollable external events such as electrical noise.

Watchdog Timer Clock Source

The Watchdog Timer clock source is provided by the internal clock, f_{LIRC} which is sourced from the LIRC oscillator. The LIRC internal oscillator has an approximate frequency of 32kHz and this specified internal clock period can vary with V_{DD} , temperature and process variations. The Watchdog Timer source clock is then subdivided by a ratio of 2^8 to 2^{18} to give longer timeouts, the actual value being chosen using the WS2~WS0 bits in the WDTC register.

Watchdog Timer Control Register

A single register, WDTC, controls the required timeout period as well as the WDT enable/disable and software reset MCU operation. This register controls the overall operation of the Watchdog Timer.

• **WDTC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	WE4	WE3	WE2	WE1	WE0	WS2	WS1	WS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1

Bit 7~3 **WE4~WE0**: WDT function enable control

10101: Disable

01010: Enable

Other values: Reset MCU

If these bits are changed due to adverse environmental conditions, the microcontroller will be reset. The reset operation will be activated after a delay time, t_{SRESET} , and the WRF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1.

Bit 2~0 **WS2~WS0**: WDT time-out period selection

000: $2^8/f_{LIRC}$

001: $2^{10}/f_{LIRC}$

010: $2^{12}/f_{LIRC}$

011: $2^{14}/f_{LIRC}$

100: $2^{15}/f_{LIRC}$

101: $2^{16}/f_{LIRC}$

110: $2^{17}/f_{LIRC}$

111: $2^{18}/f_{LIRC}$

These three bits determine the division ratio of the watchdog timer source clock, which in turn determines the time-out period.

• **RSTFC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	RSTF	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	x	0	0

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3 **RSTF**: Reset control register software reset flag

Refer to Internal Reset Control section.

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag

Refer to the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR control register software reset flag

Refer to the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT control register software reset flag

0: Not occurred

1: Occurred

This bit is set to 1 by the WDT control register software reset and cleared by the application program. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Watchdog Timer Operation

The Watchdog Timer operates by providing a device reset when its timer overflows. This means that in the application program and during normal operation the user has to strategically clear the Watchdog Timer before it overflows to prevent the Watchdog Timer from executing a reset. This is done using the clear watchdog instruction. If the program malfunctions for whatever reason, jumps to an unknown location, or enters an endless loop, the clear instruction will not be executed in the correct manner, in which case the Watchdog Timer will overflow and reset the device. With regard to the Watchdog Timer enable/disable function, there are five bits, WE4~WE0, in the WDTC register to offer the enable/disable control and reset control of the Watchdog Timer. The WDT function will be enabled when the WE4~WE0 bits are set to a value of 01010B while the WDT function will be disabled if the WE4~WE0 bits are equal to 10101B. If the WE4~WE0 bits are set to any other values rather than 01010B and 10101B, it will reset the device after a delay time, t_{RESET} . After power on these bits will have a value of 01010B.

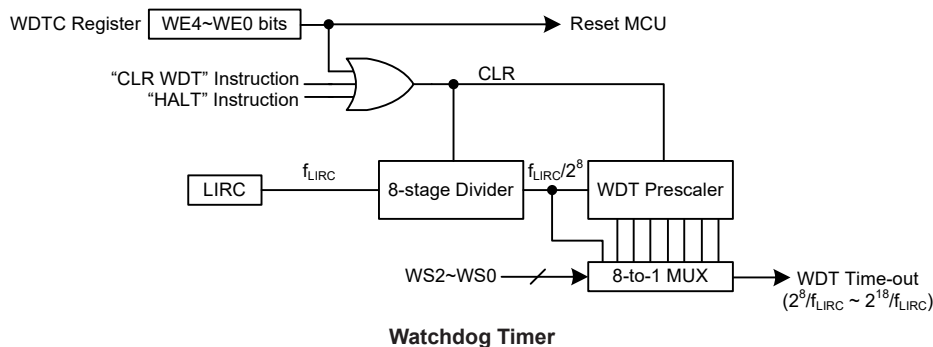
WE4~WE0 Bits	WDT Function
10101B	Disable
01010B	Enable
Any other value	Reset MCU

Watchdog Timer Function Control

Under normal program operation, a Watchdog Timer time-out will initialise a device reset and set the status bit TO. However, if the system is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, when a Watchdog Timer time-out occurs, the TO bit in the status register will be set and only the Program Counter and Stack Pointer will be reset. Three methods can be adopted to clear the contents of the Watchdog Timer. The first is a WDT software reset, which means a certain value except 01010B and 10101B written into the WE4~WE0 field, the second is using the Watchdog Timer software clear instruction and the third is via a HALT instruction.

There is only one method of using software instruction to clear the Watchdog Timer. That is to use the single “CLR WDT” instruction to clear the WDT contents.

The maximum time out period is when the 2^{18} division ratio is selected. As an example, with a 32kHz LIRC oscillator as its source clock, this will give a maximum watchdog period of around 8 second for the 2^{18} division ratio and a minimum timeout of 8ms for the 2^8 division ration.



Reset and Initialisation

A reset function is a fundamental part of any microcontroller ensuring that the device can be set to some predetermined condition irrespective of outside parameters. The most important reset condition is after power is first applied to the microcontroller. In this case, internal circuitry will ensure that the microcontroller, after a short delay, will be in a well defined state and ready to execute the first program instruction. After this power-on reset, certain important internal registers will be set to defined states before the program commences. One of these registers is the Program Counter, which will be reset to zero forcing the microcontroller to begin program execution from the lowest Program Memory address.

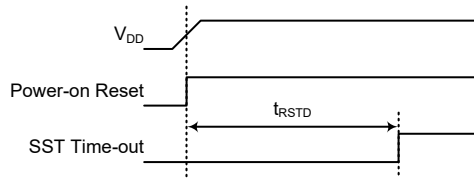
In addition to the power-on reset, another reset exists in the form of a Low Voltage Reset, LVR, where a full reset is implemented in situations where the power supply voltage falls below a certain threshold. Another type of reset is when the Watchdog Timer overflows and resets the microcontroller. All types of reset operations result in different register conditions being setup.

Reset Functions

There are several ways in which a microcontroller reset can occur through events occurring internally.

Power-on Reset

The most fundamental and unavoidable reset is the one that occurs after power is first applied to the microcontroller. As well as ensuring that the Program Memory begins execution from the first memory address, a power-on reset also ensures that certain other registers are preset to known conditions. All the I/O port and port control registers will power up in a high condition ensuring that all pins will be first set to inputs.



Power-On Reset Timing Chart

Internal Reset Control

There is an internal reset control register, RSTC, which is used to provide a reset when the device operates abnormally due to the environmental noise interference. If the content of the RSTC register is set to any value other than 01010101B or 10101010B, it will reset the device after a delay time, t_{SRESET}. After power on the register will have a value of 01010101B.

RSTC7~RSTC0 Bits	Reset Function
01010101B	No operation
10101010B	No operation
Any other value	Reset MCU

Internal Reset Function Control

• RSTC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	RSTC7	RSTC6	RSTC5	RSTC4	RSTC3	RSTC2	RSTC1	RSTC0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1

Bit 7~0 **RSTC7~RSTC0**: Reset function control

01010101: No operation

10101010: No operation

Other values: Reset MCU

If these bits are changed due to adverse environmental conditions, the microcontroller will be reset. The reset operation will be activated after a delay time, t_{SRESET} and the RSTF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1.

• RSTFC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	RSTF	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	x	0	0

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3 **RSTF**: Reset control register software reset flag

0: Not occurred

1: Occurred

This bit is set high by the RSTC control register software reset and cleared to zero by the application program. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag

Refer to the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR control register software reset flag

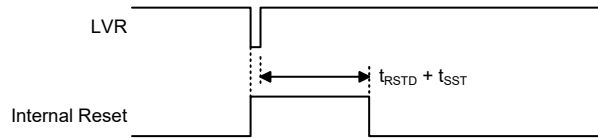
Refer to the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT control register software reset flag

Refer to the Watchdog Timer Control Register section.

Low Voltage Reset – LVR

The microcontroller contains a low voltage reset circuit in order to monitor the supply voltage of the device. The LVR function is always enabled in the FAST and SLOW modes with a specific LVR voltage, V_{LVR} . If the supply voltage of the device drops to within a range of $0.9V \sim V_{\text{LVR}}$ such as might occur when changing the battery, the LVR will automatically reset the device internally and the LVRF bit in the RSTFC register will also be set to 1. For a valid LVR signal, a low supply voltage, i.e., a voltage in the range between $0.9V \sim V_{\text{LVR}}$ must exist for a time greater than that specified by t_{LVR} in the LVD/LVR Electrical Characteristics. If the duration of the low supply voltage state does not exceed this value, the LVR will ignore the low supply voltage and will not perform a reset function. The actual V_{LVR} value can be selected by the LVS bits in the LVRC register. If the LVS7~LVS0 bits have any other values, which may perhaps occur due to adverse environmental conditions such as noise, the LVR will reset the device after a delay time, t_{SRESET} . When this happens, the LRF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1. Note that the LVR function will be automatically disabled when the device enters the SLEEP/IDLE mode.



Low Voltage Reset Timing Chart

• **LVRC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LVS7	LVS6	LVS5	LVS4	LVS3	LVS2	LVS1	LVS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1

Bit 7~0 **LVS7~LVS0**: LVR voltage selection

01010101: 2.1V

00110011: 2.55V

10011001: 3.15V

10101010: 3.8V

Other values: Generates a MCU reset – register is reset to POR value

When an actual low voltage condition occurs, as specified by one of the four defined LVR voltage values above, an MCU reset will be generated. The reset operation will be activated after the low voltage condition keeps for greater than a t_{LVR} time. In this situation the register contents will remain the same after such a reset occurs.

Any register value, other than the four defined register values above, will also result in the generation of an MCU reset. The reset operation will be activated after a delay time, t_{RESET} . However in this situation the register contents will be reset to the POR value.

• **TLVRC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	TLVR1	TLVR0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	1

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1~0 **TLVR1~TLVR0**: Minimum low voltage width to reset time (t_{LVR}) selection

00: $(7\sim8) \times t_{LIRC}$

01: $(31\sim32) \times t_{LIRC}$

10: $(63\sim64) \times t_{LIRC}$

11: $(127\sim128) \times t_{LIRC}$

• **RSTFC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	RSTF	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	x	0	0

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3 **RSTF**: Reset control register software reset flag

Refer to the Internal Reset Control section.

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag

0: Not occurred

1: Occurred

This bit is set high when a specific Low Voltage Reset situation condition occurs. This bit can only be cleared to zero by the application program.

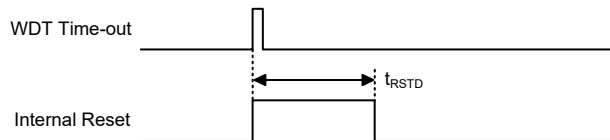
- Bit 1 **LRF:** LVR control register software reset flag
 0: Not occurred
 1: Occurred
 This bit is set high if the LVRC register contains any non-defined LVR voltage register values. This in effect acts like a software-reset function. This bit can only be cleared to zero by the application program.
- Bit 0 **WRF:** WDT control register software reset flag
 Refer to the Watchdog Timer Control Register section.

IAP Reset

When a specific value of “55H” is written into the FC1 register, a reset signal will be generated to reset the whole device. Refer to the IAP section for more associated details.

Watchdog Time-out Reset during Normal Operation

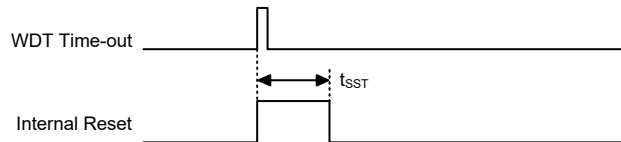
The Watchdog time-out Reset during normal operation in the FAST or SLOW Mode is the same as the hardware Low Voltage Reset except that the Watchdog time-out flag TO will be set to “1”.



WDT Time-out Reset during Normal Operation Timing Chart

Watchdog Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode

The Watchdog time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode is a little different from other kinds of reset. Most of the conditions remain unchanged except that the Program Counter and the Stack Pointer will be cleared to “0” and the TO and PDF flags will be set to “1”. Refer to the System Start Up Time Characteristics for t_{SST} details.



WDT Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode Timing Chart

Reset Initial Conditions

The different types of reset described affect the reset flags in different ways. These flags, known as PDF and TO are located in the status register and are controlled by various microcontroller operations, such as the SLEEP or IDLE Mode function or Watchdog Timer. The reset flags are shown in the table:

TO	PDF	RESET Conditions
0	0	Power-on reset
u	u	LVR reset during FAST or SLOW Mode operation
1	u	WDT time-out reset during FAST or SLOW Mode operation
1	1	WDT time-out reset during IDLE or SLEEP Mode operation

“u”: unchanged

The following table indicates the way in which the various components of the microcontroller are affected after a power-on reset occurs.

Item	Condition After RESET
Program Counter	Reset to zero
Interrupts	All interrupts will be disabled
WDT, Time Bases	Clear after reset, WDT begins counting
Timer Modules	Timer Modules will be turned off
Input/Output Ports	I/O ports will be setup as inputs
Stack Pointer	Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack

The different kinds of resets all affect the internal registers of the microcontroller in different ways. To ensure reliable continuation of normal program execution after a reset occurs, it is important to know what condition the microcontroller is in after a particular reset occurs. The following table describes how each type of reset affects the microcontroller internal registers.

Register	Power On Reset	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
IAR0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IAR1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ACC	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PCL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000
TBLP	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBLH	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBHP	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
STATUS	xx00 xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uu1u uuuu	uu11 uuuu
IAR2	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RSTFC	---- 0x00	---- u1uu	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
SCC	000- --00	000- --00	000- --00	uuu- --uu
HIRCC	---- 0001	---- 0001	---- 0001	---- uuuu
STKPTR	0--- -000	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -000
IECC	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PA	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PAC	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PAPU	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PAWU	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RSTC	0101 0101	0101 0101	0101 0101	uuuu uuuu
LVRC	0101 0101	0101 0101	0101 0101	uuuu uuuu
LVDC	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
MFIO	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MF11	--00 --00	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
TLVRC	---- --01	---- --01	---- --01	---- --uu
WDTC	0101 0011	0101 0011	0101 0011	uuuu uuuu
INTEG	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
INTC0	-000 0000	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
INTC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
INTC2	--00 --00	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu

Register	Power On Reset	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
PB	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
PBC	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
PBPU	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
PAS0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PAS1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SLEDC	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
IFS	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PSCR	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TB0C	0--- -000	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
TB1C	0--- -000	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
EEAL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EEAH	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
EED	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTMC0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTMC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTMDL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTMDH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
CTMAL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTMAH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTMC0	0000 0---	0000 0---	0000 0---	uuuu u---
PTMC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMDL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMDH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMAL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMAH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMRPL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMRPH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SIMC0	111- 0000	111- 0000	111- 0000	uuu- uuuu
SIMC1	1000 0001	1000 0001	1000 0001	uuuu uuuu
SIMC2/SIMA	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SIMD	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
SIMTOC	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
USR	0000 1011	0000 1011	0000 1011	uuuu uuuu
UCR1	0000 00x0	0000 00x0	0000 00x0	uuuu uuuu
UCR2	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
UCR3	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
BRDH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
BRDL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
UFCR	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TXR_RXR	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RxCNT	---- -000	---- -000	---- -000	---- -uuu
FC0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FC2	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
FARL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FARH	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
FD0L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Register	Power On Reset	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
FD0H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD1L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD1H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD2L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD2H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD3L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD3H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PWRC	000- 0000	000- 0000	000- 0000	uuu- uuuu
PGAC0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PGAC1	000- ----	000- ----	000- ----	uuu- ----
PGACS	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ADRL	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRM	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRH	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCR0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ADCR1	--00 00--	--00 00--	--00 00--	--uu uu--
ADCS	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
VBOPC	0--- 1010	0--- 1010	0--- 1010	u--- uuuu
DSDACC	00-- ----	00-- ----	00-- ----	uu-- ----
DSDAH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
DSDAL	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
LNOPC	0--- -000	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
PCRL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCRH	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CRCCR	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
CRCIN	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CRCDL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CRCDH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EEC	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Note: “u” stands for unchanged
“x” stands for “unknown”
“-” stands for unimplemented

Input/Output Ports

Holtek microcontrollers offer considerable flexibility on their I/O ports. With the input or output designation of every pin fully under user program control, pull-high selections for all ports and wake-up selections on certain pins, the user is provided with an I/O structure to meet the needs of a wide range of application possibilities.

The device provides bidirectional input/output lines. These I/O ports are mapped to the RAM Data Memory with specific addresses as shown in the Special Purpose Data Memory table. The I/O port can be used for input and output operations. For input operation, the port is non-latching, which means the inputs must be ready at the T2 rising edge of instruction “MOV A, [m]”, where m denotes the port address. For output operation, all the data is latched and remains unchanged until the output latch is rewritten.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA	PA7	PA6	PA5	PA4	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0
PAC	PAC7	PAC6	PAC5	PAC4	PAC3	PAC2	PAC1	PAC0
PAPU	PAPU7	PAPU6	PAPU5	PAPU4	PAPU3	PAPU2	PAPU1	PAPU0
PAWU	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
PB	—	—	—	—	—	—	PB1	PB0
PBC	—	—	—	—	—	—	PBC1	PBC0
PBPU	—	—	—	—	—	—	PBPU1	PBPU0

“—”: Unimplemented, read as “0”

I/O Logic Function Register List

Pull-high Resistors

Many product applications require pull-high resistors for their switch inputs usually requiring the use of an external resistor. To eliminate the need for these external resistors, all I/O pins, when configured as a digital input have the capability of being connected to an internal pull-high resistor. These pull-high resistors are selected using the register, namely PxPU, and are implemented using weak PMOS transistors.

Note that the pull-high resistor can be controlled by the relevant pull-high control register only when the pin-shared functional pin is selected as a digital input or NMOS output. Otherwise, the pull-high resistors cannot be enabled.

• PxPU Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PxPU7	PxPU6	PxPU5	PxPU4	PxPU3	PxPU2	PxPU1	PxPU0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PxPUn: I/O Port x Pin pull-high function control

0: Disable

1: Enable

The PxPUn bit is used to control the pin pull-high function. Here the “x” is the Port name which can be A or B. However, the actual available bits for each I/O Port may be different.

Port A Wake-up

The HALT instruction forces the microcontroller into the SLEEP or IDLE Mode which preserves power, a feature that is important for battery and other low-power applications. Various methods exist to wake-up the microcontroller, one of which is to change the logic condition on one of the Port A pins from high to low. This function is especially suitable for applications that can be woken up via external switches. Each pin on Port A can be selected individually to have this wake-up feature using the PAWU register.

Note that the wake-up function can be controlled by the wake-up control registers only when the pin is selected as a general purpose input and the MCU enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode.

• PAWU Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **PAWU7~PAWU0**: PA7~PA0 wake-up function control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

I/O Port Control Register

Each Port has its own control register which controls the input/output configuration. With this control register, each CMOS output or input can be reconfigured dynamically under software control. Each pin of the I/O ports is directly mapped to a bit in its associated port control register. For the I/O pin to function as an input, the corresponding bit of the control register must be written as a “1”. This will then allow the logic state of the input pin to be directly read by instructions. When the corresponding bit of the control register is written as a “0”, the I/O pin will be setup as a CMOS output. If the pin is currently setup as an output, instructions can still be used to read the output register. However, it should be noted that the program will in fact only read the status of the output data latch and not the actual logic status of the output pin when the IECM is cleared to “0”.

• PxC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PxC7	PxC6	PxC5	PxC4	PxC3	PxC2	PxC1	PxC0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

PxCn: I/O Port x Pin type selection
 0: Output
 1: Input

The PxCn bit is used to control the pin type selection. Here the “x” is the Port name which can be A or B. However, the actual available bits for each I/O Port may be different.

I/O Port Source Current Control

The device supports different output source current driving capability for each I/O port. With the selection register, SLEDC, specific I/O port can support four levels of the source current driving capability. These source current selection bits are available when the corresponding pin is configured as a CMOS output. Otherwise, these select bits have no effect. Users should refer to the Input/Output Characteristics section to select the desired output source current for different applications.

• SLEDC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	SLEDC5	SLEDC4	SLEDC3	SLEDC2	SLEDC1	SLEDC0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5~4 **SLEDC5~SLEDC4**: PB1~PB0 source current selection
 00: Source current = Level 0 (min.)
 01: Source current = Level 1
 10: Source current = Level 2
 11: Source current = Level 3 (max.)
- Bit 3~2 **SLEDC3~SLEDC2**: PA7~PA4 source current selection
 00: Source current = Level 0 (min.)
 01: Source current = Level 1
 10: Source current = Level 2
 11: Source current = Level 3 (max.)
- Bit 1~0 **SLEDC1~SLEDC0**: PA3~PA0 source current selection
 00: Source current = Level 0 (min.)
 01: Source current = Level 1
 10: Source current = Level 2
 11: Source current = Level 3 (max.)

Pin-shared Functions

The flexibility of the microcontroller range is greatly enhanced by the use of pins that have more than one function. Limited numbers of pins can force serious design constraints on designers but by supplying pins with multi-functions, many of these difficulties can be overcome. For these pins, the desired function of the multi-function I/O pins is selected by a series of registers via the application program control.

Pin-shared Function Selection Registers

The limited number of supplied pins in a package can impose restrictions on the amount of functions a certain device can contain. However by allowing the same pins to share several different functions and providing a means of function selection, a wide range of different functions can be incorporated into even relatively small package sizes. The device includes Port “x” output function Selection register “n”, labeled as PxSn, and Input Function Selection register, labeled as IFS, which can select the desired functions of the multi-function pin-shared pins.

The most important point to note is to make sure that the desired pin-shared function is properly selected and also deselected. For most pin-shared functions, to select the desired pin-shared function, the pin-shared function should first be correctly selected using the corresponding pin-shared control register. After that the corresponding peripheral functional setting should be configured and then the peripheral function can be enabled. However, a special point must be noted for digital input pins, such as INTn, xTCK, PTPI, etc, which share the same pin-shared control configuration with their corresponding general purpose I/O functions when setting the relevant pin-shared control bits. To select these pin functions, in addition to the necessary pin-shared control and peripheral functional setup aforementioned, they must also be set as an input by setting the corresponding bit in the I/O port control register. To correctly deselect the pin-shared function, the peripheral function should first be disabled and then the corresponding pin-shared function control register can be modified to select other pin-shared functions.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PAS0	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
PAS1	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
IFS	—	—	—	—	—	—	RXIPS1	RXIPS0

Pin-shared Function Selection Register List

• **PAS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PAS07~PAS06:** PA3 pin-shared function selection

- 00: PA3/CTCK
- 01: PA3/CTCK
- 10: RX/TX
- 11: SDO

Bit 5~4 **PAS05~PAS04:** PA2 pin-shared function selection

- 00: PA2
- 01: PA2
- 10: TX
- 11: SCK/SCL

Bit 3~2 **PAS03~PAS02:** PA1 pin-shared function selection

- 00: PA1
- 01: PA1
- 10: PA1
- 11: LVDIN

Bit 1~0 **PAS01~PAS00:** PA0 pin-shared function selection

- 00: PA0
- 01: PA0
- 10: RX/TX
- 11: SDI/SDA

• **PAS1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PAS17~PAS16:** PA7 pin-shared function selection

- 00: PA7/INT1
- 01: PA7/INT1
- 10: PA7/INT1
- 11: PTPB

Bit 5~4 **PAS15~PAS14:** PA6 pin-shared function selection

- 00: PA6/INT0
- 01: PA6/INT0
- 10: PA6/INT0
- 11: PTP

- Bit 3~2 **PAS13~PAS12:** PA5 pin-shared function selection
 - 00: PA5/PTPI
 - 01: PA5/PTPI
 - 10: PA5/PTPI
 - 11: CTP
- Bit 1~0 **PAS11~PAS10:** PA4 pin-shared function selection
 - 00: PA4/PTCK
 - 01: PA4/PTCK
 - 10: TX
 - 11: SCS

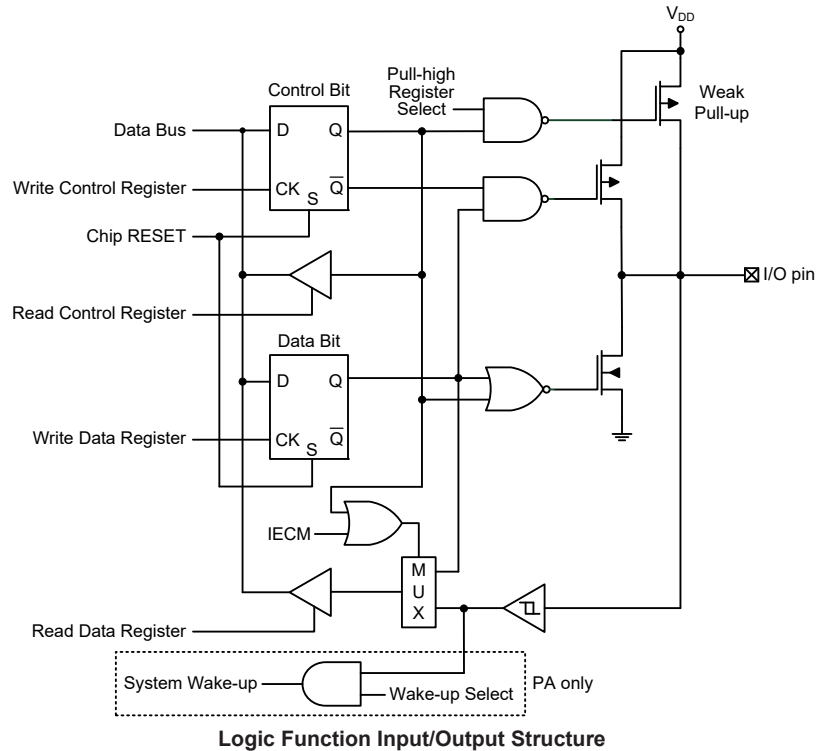
• **IFS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	RXIPS1	RXIPS0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

- Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 1~0 **RXIPS1~RXIPS0:** RX/TX input source pin selection
 - 00: PA0
 - 01: PA3
 - 10: Reserved
 - 11: PA0

I/O Pin Structures

The accompanying diagram illustrates the internal structure of the I/O logic function. As the exact logical construction of the I/O pin will differ from this drawing, it is supplied as a guide only to assist with the functional understanding of the I/O logic function. The wide range of pin-shared structures does not permit all types to be shown.



READ PORT Function

The READ PORT function is used to manage the reading of the output data from the data latch or I/O pin, which is specially designed for the IEC 60730 self-diagnostic test on the I/O function and A/D paths. There is a register, IECC, which is used to control the READ PORT function. If the READ PORT function is disabled, the pin function will operate as the selected pin-shared function. When a specific data pattern, “11001010”, is written into the IECC register, the internal signal named IECM will be set high to enable the READ PORT function. If the READ PORT function is enabled, the value on the corresponding pins will be passed to the accumulator ACC when the read port instruction “mov a, Px” is executed where the “x” stands for the corresponding I/O port name.

Note that the READ PORT mode can only control the input path and will not affect the pin-shared function assignment and the current MCU operation. However, when the IECC register content is set to any other values rather than “11001010”, the IECM internal signal will be cleared to 0 to disable the READ PORT function, and the reading path will be set from the latch. If the READ PORT function is disabled, the pin function will operate as the selected pin-shared function.

• IECC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	IECS7	IECS6	IECS5	IECS4	IECS3	IECS2	IECS1	IECS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

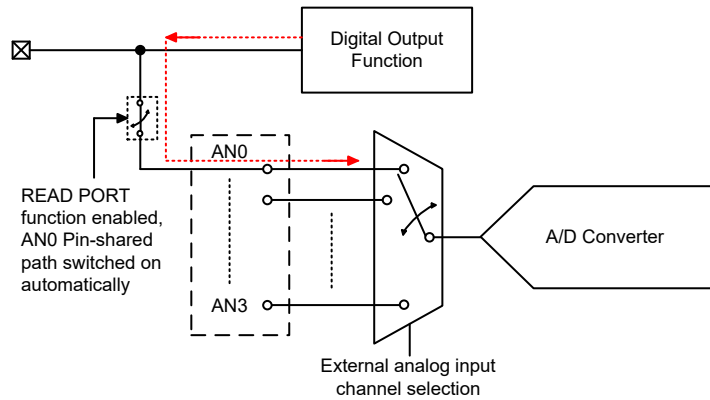
Bit 7~0 **IECS7~IECS0:** READ PORT function enable control bit 7 ~ bit 0
 11001010: IECM=1 – READ PORT function is enabled
 Others: IECM=0 – READ PORT function is disabled

READ PORT Function Port Control Register Bit – Px.C.n	Disabled		Enabled	
	1	0	1	0
I/O Function	Pin value	Data latch value	Pin value	
Digital Input Function				
Digital Output Function (except SIM and UART)	0			
SIM: SCK/SCL, SDI/SDA UART: RX/TX	Pin value			
Analog Function	0			

Note: The value on the above table is the content of the ACC register after “mov a, Px” instruction is executed where “x” means the relevant port name.

The additional function of the READ PORT mode is to check the A/D path. When the READ PORT function is disabled, the A/D path from the external pin to the internal analog input will be switched off if the A/D input pin function is not selected by the corresponding selection bits. For the MCU with A/D converter channels, such as A/D AN0~AN3, the desired A/D channel can be switched on by properly configuring the external analog input channel selection bits in the A/D Control Register together with the corresponding analog input pin function is selected. However, the additional function of the READ PORT mode is to force the A/D path to be switched on. For example, when the AN0 is selected as the analog input channel as the READ PORT function is enabled, the AN0 analog input path will be switched on even if the AN0 analog input pin function is not selected. In this way, the AN0 analog input path can be examined by internally connecting the digital output on this shared pin with the AN0 analog input pin switch and then converting the corresponding digital data without any external analog input voltage connected.

Note that the A/D converter reference voltage should be equal to the I/O power supply voltage when examining the A/D path using the READ PORT function.



A/D Channel Input Path Internally Connection

Programming Considerations

Within the user program, one of the first things to consider is port initialisation. After a reset, all of the I/O data and port control registers will be set high. This means that all I/O pins will default to an input state, the level of which depends on the other connected circuitry and whether pull-high selections have been chosen. If the port control registers are then programmed to setup some pins as outputs, these output pins will have an initial high output value unless the associated port data registers are first programmed. Selecting which pins are inputs and which are outputs can be achieved byte-wide by loading the correct values into the appropriate port control register or by programming individual bits in the port control register using the “SET [m].i” and “CLR [m].i” instructions. Note that when using these bit control instructions, a read-modify-write operation takes place. The microcontroller must first read in the data on the entire port, modify it to the required new bit values and then rewrite this data back to the output ports.

Port A has the additional capability of providing wake-up function. When the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, various methods are available to wake the device up. One of these is a high to low transition of any of the Port A pins. Single or multiple pins on Port A can be setup to have this function.

Timer Modules – TM

One of the most fundamental functions in any microcontroller devices is the ability to control and measure time. To implement time related functions the device includes several Timer Modules, generally abbreviated to the name TM. The TMs are multi-purpose timing units and serve to provide operations such as Timer/Counter, Input Capture, Compare Match Output and Single Pulse Output as well as being the functional unit for the generation of PWM signals. Each of the TMs has two interrupts. The addition of input and output pins for each TM ensures that users are provided with timing units with a wide and flexible range of features.

The common features of the different TM types are described here with more detailed information provided in the individual Compact and Periodic Type TM sections.

Introduction

The device contains two Timer Modules and each individual TM can be categorised as a certain type, namely the Compact Type TM or Periodic Type TM. Although similar in nature, the different TM types vary in their feature complexity. The common features to all of the Compact and Periodic type TMs will be described in this section and the detailed operation regarding each of the TM types will be described in separate sections. The main features and differences between the two types of TMs are summarised in the accompanying table.

Function	CTM	PTM
Timer/Counter	√	√
Input Capture	—	√
Compare Match Output	√	√
PWM Output	√	√
Single Pulse Output	—	√
PWM Alignment	Edge	Edge
PWM Adjustment Period & Duty	Duty or Period	Duty or Period

TM Function Summary

TM Operation

The different types of TM offer a diverse range of functions, from simple timing operations to PWM signal generation. The key to understanding how the TM operates is to see it in terms of a free running count-up counter whose value is then compared with the value of pre-programmed internal comparators. When the free running count-up counter has the same value as the pre-programmed comparator, known as a compare match situation, a TM interrupt signal will be generated which can clear the counter and perhaps also change the condition of the TM output pin. The internal TM counter is driven by a user selectable clock source, which can be an internal clock or an external pin.

TM Clock Source

The clock source which drives the main counter in each TM can originate from various sources. The selection of the required clock source is implemented using the xTCK2~xTCK0 bits in the xTM control registers, where “x” stands for C or P type TM. The clock source can be a ratio of the system clock, f_{SYS} , or the internal high clock, f_{H} , the f_{SUB} clock source or the external xTCK pin. The xTCK pin clock source is used to allow an external signal to drive the TM as an external clock source for event counting.

TM Interrupts

The Compact or Periodic type TM each has two internal interrupt, one for each of the internal comparator A or comparator P, which generate a TM interrupt when a compare match condition occurs. When a TM interrupt is generated, it can be used to clear the counter and also to change the state of the TM output pin.

TM External Pins

Each of the TMs, irrespective of what type, has one input pin with the label xTCK while the Periodic type TM has another input pin with the label PTPI. The xTM input pin, xTCK, is essentially a clock source for the xTM and is selected using the xTCK2~xTCK0 bits in the xTMC0 register. This external TM input pin allows an external clock source to drive the internal TM. The xTCK input pin can be chosen to have either a rising or falling active edge. The PTCK pin is also used as the external trigger input pin in single pulse output mode for the PTM.

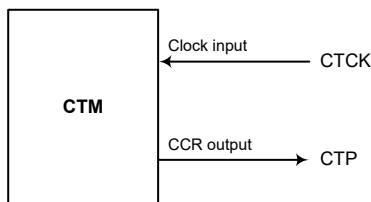
The other PTM input pin, PTPI, is the capture input whose active edge can be a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges and the active edge transition type is selected using the PTIO1~PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. There is another capture input, PTCK, for PTM capture input mode, which can be used as the external trigger input source except the PTPI pin.

The TMs each has an output pin with the label xTP while the Periodic type TM has another output pin, PTPB. The PTPB is the inverted signal of the PTP output. When the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode, these pins can be controlled by the TM to switch to a high or low level or to toggle when a compare match situation occurs. The external output pins are also the pins where the TM generates the PWM output waveform.

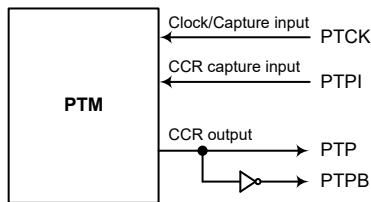
As the TM input and output pins are pin-shared with other functions, the TM input and output function must first be setup using relevant pin-shared function selection register. The details of the pin-shared function selection are described in the pin-shared function section.

CTM		PTM	
Input	Output	Input	Output
CTCK	CTP	PTCK, PTPI	PTP, PTPB

TM External Pins



CTM Function Pin Block Diagram

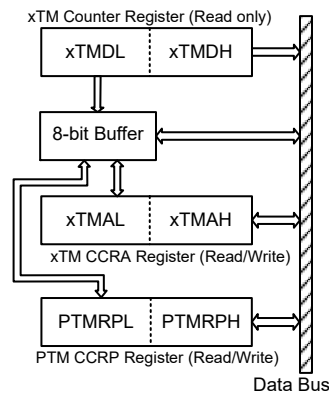


PTM Function Pin Block Diagram

Programming Considerations

The TM Counter Registers and the Capture/Compare CCRA and CCRP registers, all have a low and high byte structure. The high bytes can be directly accessed, but as the low bytes can only be accessed via an internal 8-bit buffer, reading or writing to these register pairs must be carried out in a specific way. The important point to note is that data transfer to and from the 8-bit buffer and its related low byte only takes place when a write or read operation to its corresponding high byte is executed.

As the CCRA and CCRP registers are implemented in the way shown in the following diagram and accessing these register pairs is carried out in a specific way as described above, it is recommended to use the “MOV” instruction to access the CCRA and CCRP low byte registers, named xTMAL and PTMRPL, using the following access procedures. Accessing the CCRA or CCRP low byte registers without following these access procedures will result in unpredictable values.

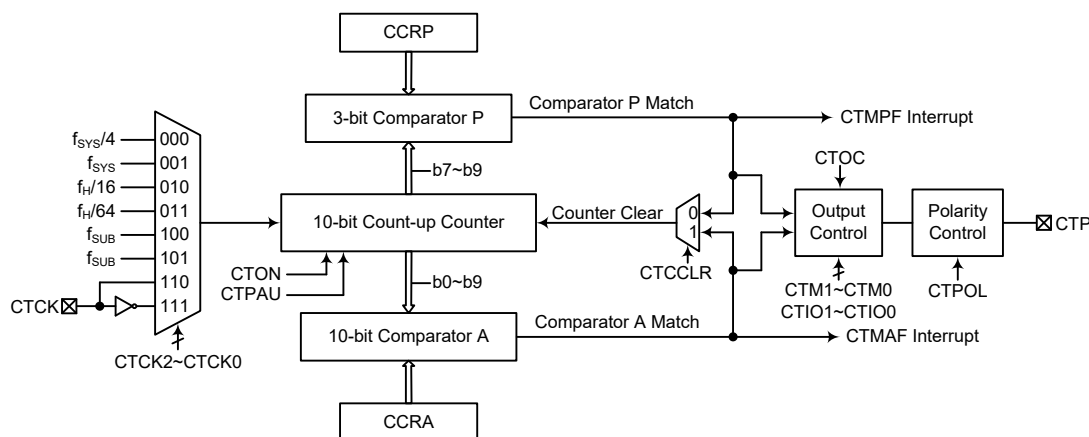


The following steps show the read and write procedures:

- Writing Data to CCRA or CCRP
 - ♦ Step 1. Write data to Low Byte xTMAL or PTMRPL
 - Note that here data is only written to the 8-bit buffer.
 - ♦ Step 2. Write data to High Byte xTMAH or PTMRPH
 - Here data is written directly to the high byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the 8-bit buffer to the Low Byte registers.
- Reading Data from the Counter Registers, CCRA or CCRP
 - ♦ Step 1. Read data from the High Byte xTMDH, xTMAH or PTMRPH
 - Here data is read directly from the High Byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the Low Byte register into the 8-bit buffer.
 - ♦ Step 2. Read data from the Low Byte xTMDL, xTMAL or PTMRPL
 - This step reads data from the 8-bit buffer.

Compact Type TM – CTM

The Compact Type TM contains three operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/Event Counter and PWM Output modes. The Compact Type TM can also be controlled with an external input pin and can drive an external output pin.



Note: The CTM external pins are pin-shared with other functions, so before using the CTM function, the pin-shared function registers must be set properly to enable the CTM pin function. The CTCK pin, if used, must also be set as an input by setting the corresponding bits in the port control register.

10-Bit Compact Type TM Block Diagram

Compact Type TM Operation

The size of Compact Type TM is 10-bit wide and its core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP comparator is 3-bit wide whose value is compared with the highest 3 bits in the counter while the CCRA is the 10 bits and therefore compares all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the CTON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a CTM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Compact Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control an output pin. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

Compact Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Compact Type TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while a read/write register pair exists to store the internal 10-bit CCRA value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes as well as three CCRP bits.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CTMC0	CTPAU	CTCK2	CTCK1	CTCK0	CTON	CTRP2	CTRP1	CTRP0
CTMC1	CTM1	CTM0	CTIO1	CTIO0	CTOC	CTPOL	CTDPX	CTCCLR
CTMDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CTMDH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
CTMAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CTMAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8

10-Bit Compact Type TM Register List

• **CTMC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CTPAU	CTCK2	CTCK1	CTCK0	CTON	CTRP2	CTRP1	CTRP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **CTPAU**: CTM counter pause control
 0: Run
 1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the CTM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **CTCK2~CTCK0**: CTM Counter clock selection
 000: $f_{SYS}/4$
 001: f_{SYS}
 010: $f_H/16$
 011: $f_H/64$
 100: f_{SUB}
 101: f_{SUB}
 110: CTCK rising edge clock
 111: CTCK falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the CTM. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the Operating Modes and System Clocks section.

Bit 3 **CTON**: CTM counter on/off control
 0: Off
 1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the CTM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run while clearing the bit disables the CTM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the CTM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again. If the CTM is in the Compare Match Output Mode or the PWM Output Mode then the CTM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the CTOC bit, when the CTON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 **CTRP2~CTRP0**: CTM CCRP 3-bit register, compared with the CTM counter bit 9 ~ bit 7
 Comparator P match period =
 000: 1024 CTM clocks
 001: 128 CTM clocks
 010: 256 CTM clocks
 011: 384 CTM clocks
 100: 512 CTM clocks
 101: 640 CTM clocks
 110: 768 CTM clocks
 111: 896 CTM clocks

These three bits are used to setup the value on the internal CCRP 3-bit register, which are then compared with the internal counter's highest three bits. The result of this comparison can be selected to clear the internal counter if the CTCCLR bit is set to zero. Setting the CTCCLR bit to zero ensures that a compare match with the CCRP values will reset the internal counter. As the CCRP bits are only compared with the highest three counter bits, the compare values exist in 128 clock cycle multiples. Clearing all three bits to zero is in effect allowing the counter to overflow at its maximum value.

• **CTMC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CTM1	CTM0	CTIO1	CTIO0	CTOC	CTPOL	CTDPX	CTCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **CTM1~CTM0**: CTM operating mode selection
 00: Compare Match Output Mode
 01: Undefined
 10: PWM Output Mode
 11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the CTM. To ensure reliable operation the CTM should be switched off before any changes are made to the CTM1 and CTM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the CTM output pin state is undefined.

Bit 5~4 **CTIO1~CTIO0**: CTM external pin function selection
 Compare Match Output Mode
 00: No change
 01: Output low
 10: Output high
 11: Toggle output
 PWM Output Mode
 00: PWM output inactive state
 01: PWM output active state
 10: PWM output
 11: Undefined

Timer/Counter Mode
 Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the CTM external pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the CTM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits determine how the CTM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The CTM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the CTM output pin should be setup using the CTOC bit in the CTMC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the CTOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the CTM output pin when

a compare match occurs. After the CTM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the CTON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits determine how the CTM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits only after the CTM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits are changed when the CTM is running.

- Bit 3 **CTOC**: CTM CTP output control
Compare Match Output Mode
 0: Initial low
 1: Initial high
PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode
 0: Active low
 1: Active high
This is the output control bit for the CTM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether CTM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode. It has no effect if the CTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the CTM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.
- Bit 2 **CTPOL**: CTM CTP output polarity control
 0: Non-invert
 1: Invert
This bit controls the polarity of the CTP output pin. When the bit is set high the CTM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the CTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.
- Bit 1 **CTDPX**: CTM PWM duty/period control
 0: CCRP – period; CCRA – duty
 1: CCRP – duty; CCRA – period
This bit determines which of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used for period and duty control of the PWM waveform.
- Bit 0 **CTCCLR**: CTM counter clear condition selection
 0: CTM Comparator P match
 1: CTM Comparator A match
This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Compact TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the CTCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The CTCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output mode.

• CTMDL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: CTM counter low byte register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 CTM 10-bit counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• CTMDH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
 Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: CTM counter high byte register bit 1 ~ bit 0
 CTM 10-bit counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

• CTMAL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: CTM CCRA low byte register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 CTM 10-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• CTMAH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
 Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: CTM CCRA high byte register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 CTM 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

Compact Type TM Operation Modes

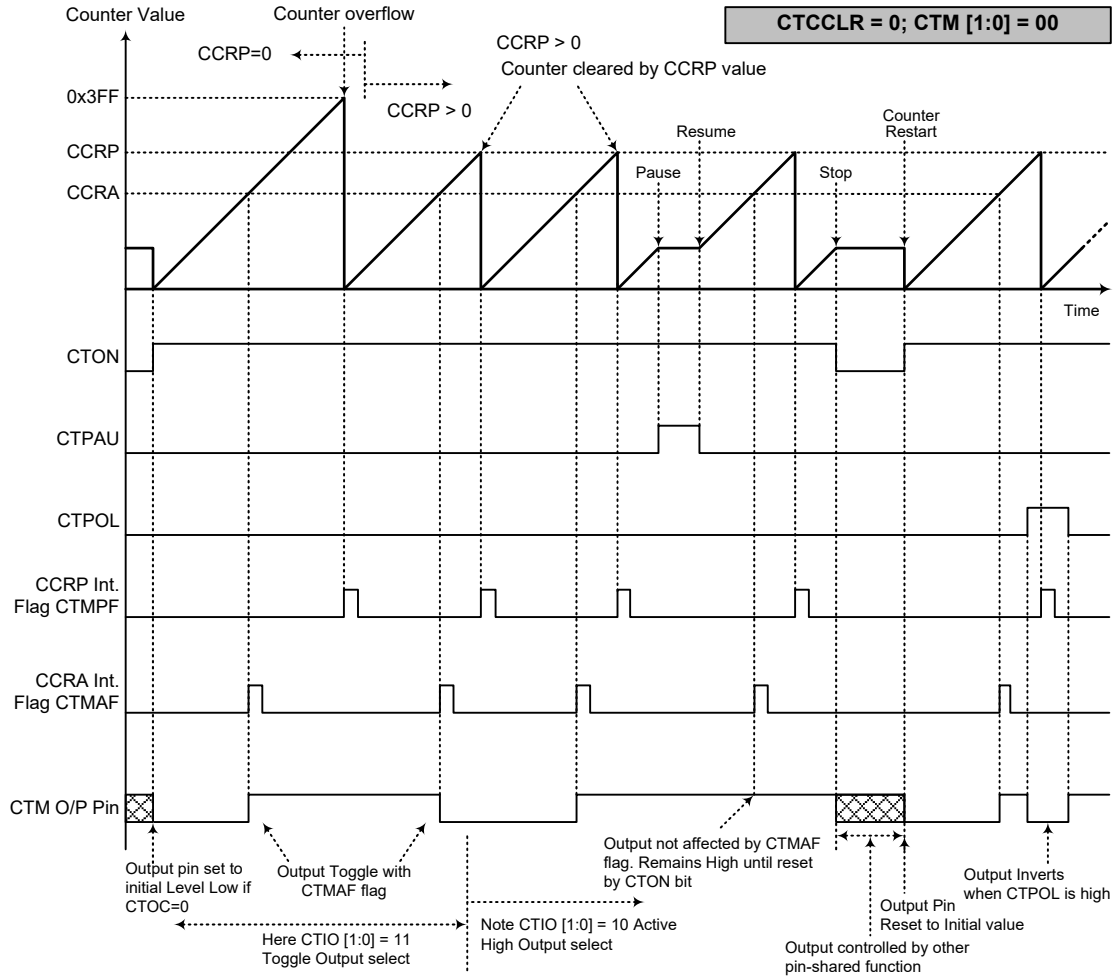
The Compact Type TM can operate in one of three operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the CTM1 and CTM0 bits in the CTMC1 register.

Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits CTM1 and CTM0 in the CTMC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the CTCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both CTMAF and CTMPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

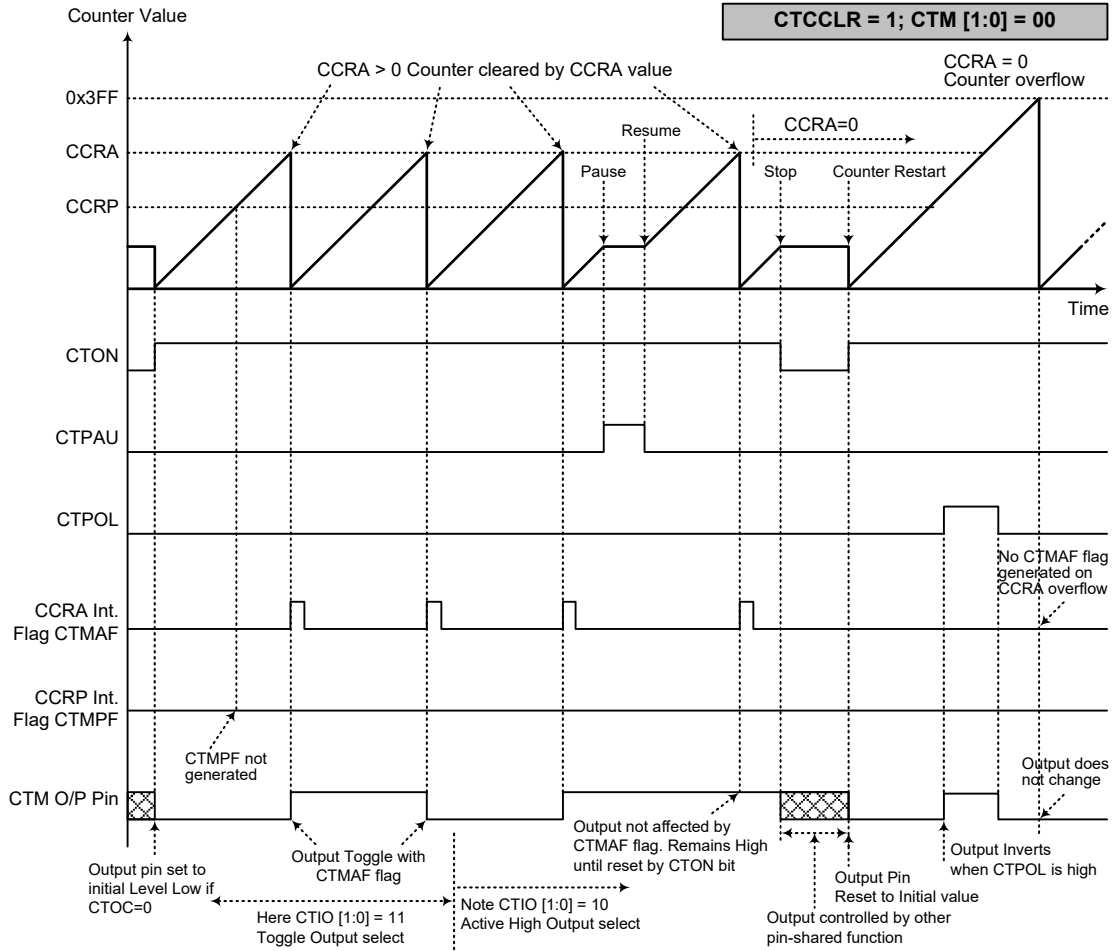
If the CTCCLR bit in the CTMC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the CTMAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when CTCCLR is high no CTMPF interrupt request flag will be generated. If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 10-bit, 3FF Hex, value. However, here the CTMAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the CTM output pin, will change state. The CTM output pin condition however only changes state when a CTMAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The CTMPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the CTM output pin. The way in which the CTM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits in the CTMC1 register. The CTM output pin can be selected using the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the CTM output pin, which is setup after the CTON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the CTOC bit. Note that if the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.



Compare Match Output Mode – CTCCLR=0

- Note: 1. With CTCCLR=0 a Comparator P match will clear the counter
 2. The CTM output pin is controlled only by the CTMAF flag
 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a CTON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – CTCCLR=1

- Note: 1. With CTCCLR=1 a Comparator A match will clear the counter
 2. The CTM output pin is controlled only by the CTMAF flag
 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a CTON bit rising edge
 4. A CTMPF flag is not generated when CTCCLR=1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits CTM1 and CTM0 in the CTMC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the CTM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the CTM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits CTM1 and CTM0 in the CTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the CTM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control, etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the CTM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the CTCCLR bit has no effect as the PWM period. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. Which register is used to control either frequency or duty cycle is determined using the CTDPX bit in the CTMC1 register. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The CTOC bit in the CTMC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the CTM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The CTPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

- **10-bit CTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTDPX=0**

CCRP	1~7	0
Period	CCRP×128	1024
Duty	CCRA	

If $f_{SYS}=8\text{MHz}$, CTM clock source is $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP=4 and CCRA=128,

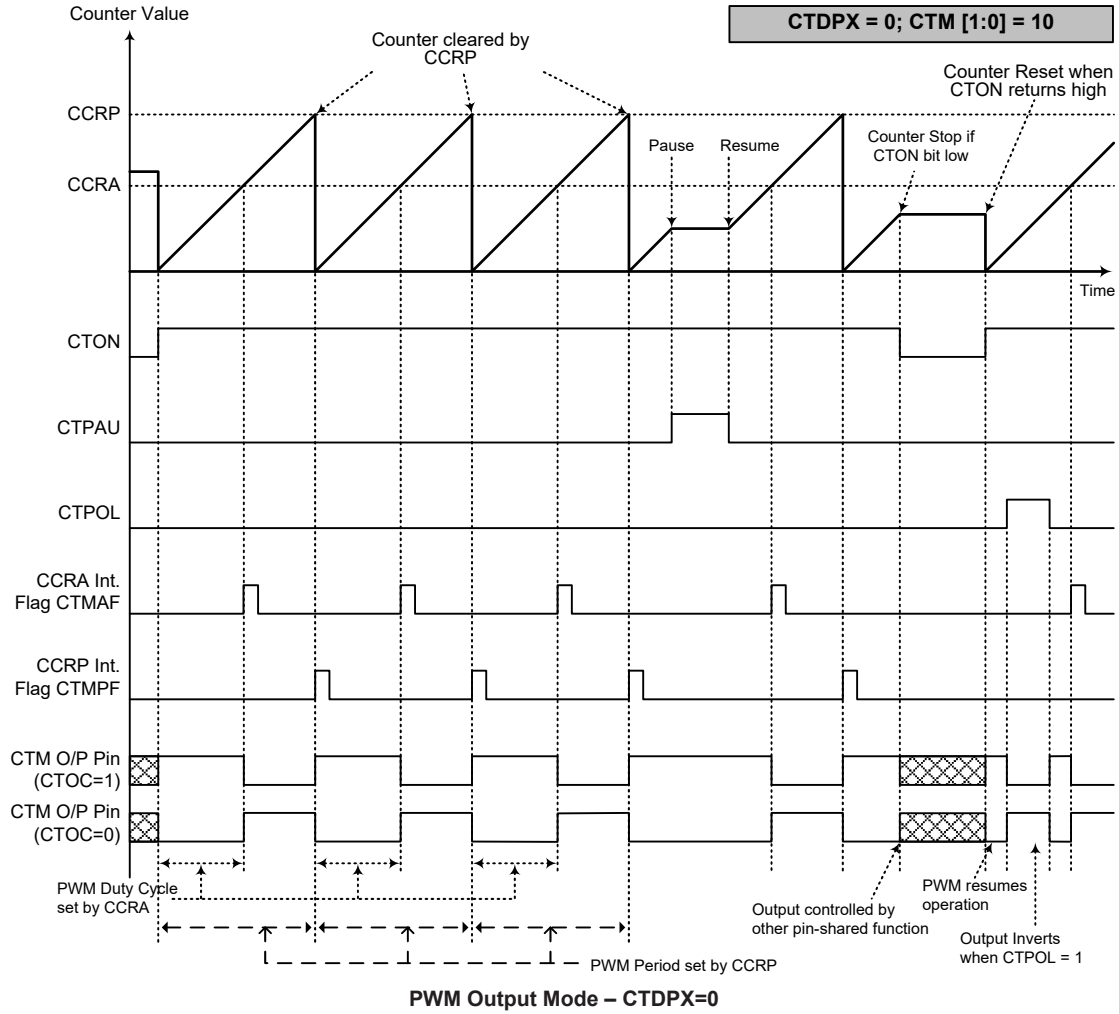
The CTM PWM output frequency = $(f_{SYS}/4)/(4 \times 128) = f_{SYS}/2048 = 4\text{kHz}$, duty = $128/(4 \times 128) = 25\%$.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

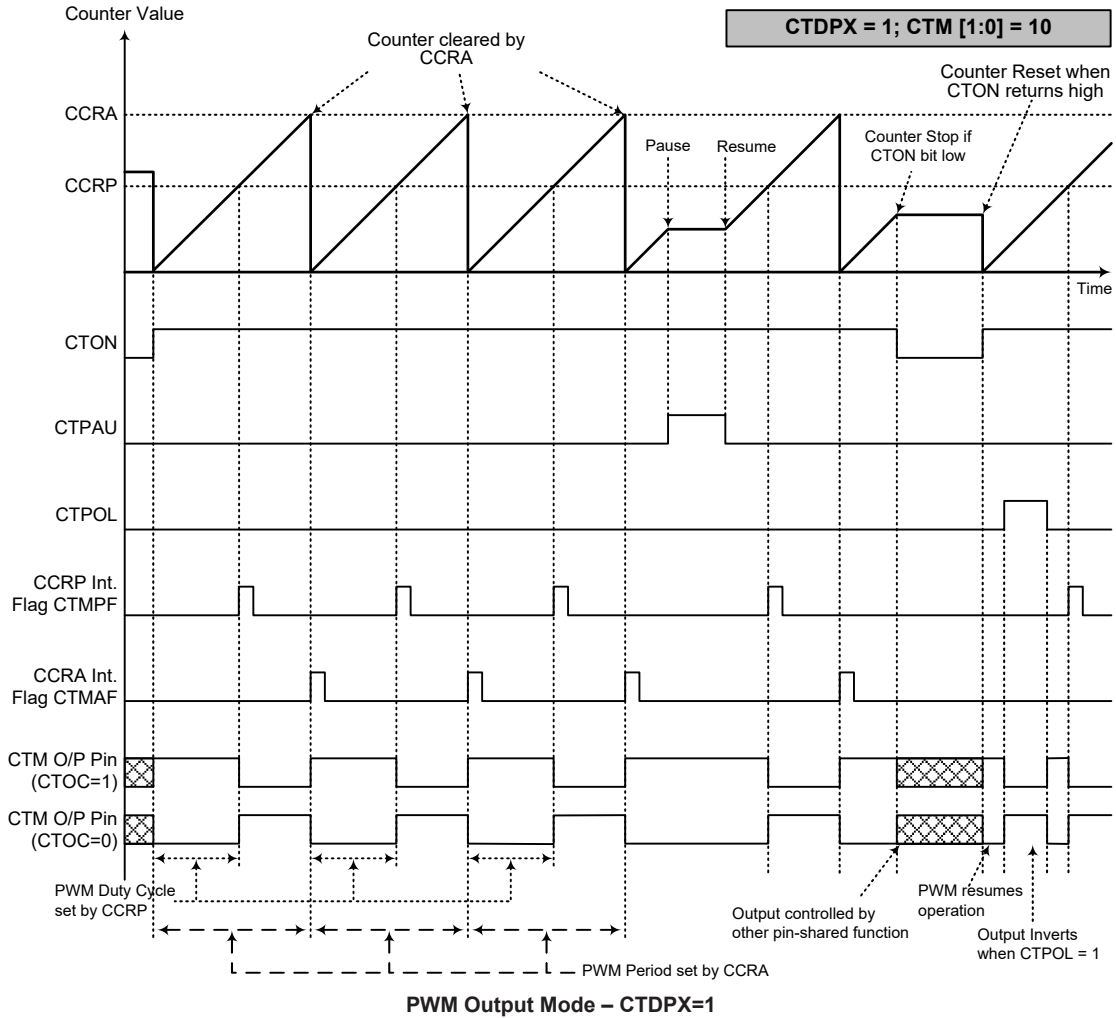
- **10-bit CTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTDPX=1**

CCRP	1~7	0
Period	CCRA	
Duty	CCRP×128	1024

The PWM output period is determined by the CCRA register value together with the CTM clock while the PWM duty cycle is defined by the CCRP register value except when the CCRP value is equal to 0.



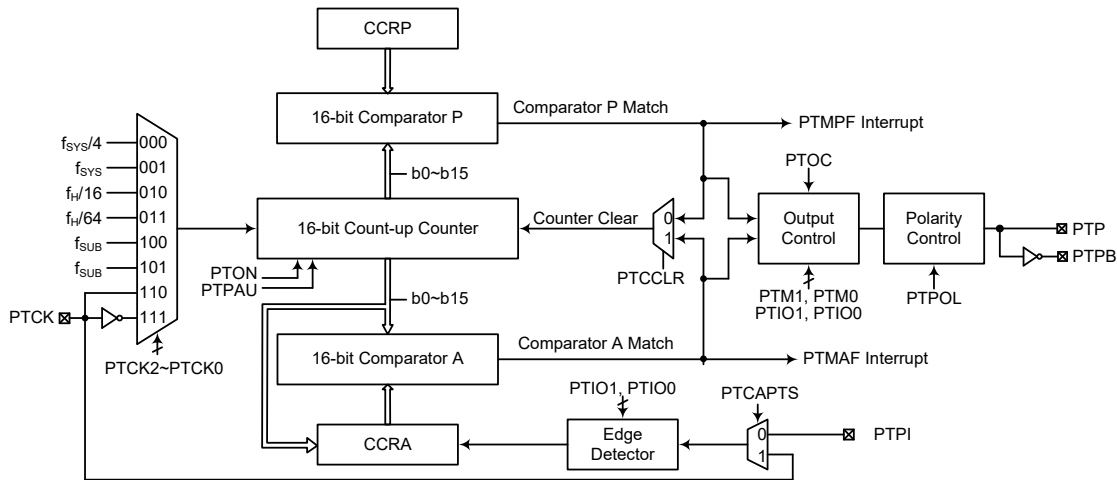
- Note: 1. Here CTDPX=0 – Counter cleared by CCRP
 2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
 3. The internal PWM function continues running even when CTIO[1:0] = 00 or 01
 4. The CTCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation



- Note: 1. Here CTD PX=1 – Counter cleared by CCRA
 2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
 3. The internal PWM function continues even when CTIO[1:0]=00 or 01
 4. The CTCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

Periodic Type TM – PTM

The Periodic Type TM contains five operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/Event Counter, Capture Input, Single Pulse Output and PWM Output modes. The Periodic TM can also be controlled with two external input pins and can drive two external output pins.



Note: The PTM external pins are pin-shared with other functions, so before using the PTM function the pin-shared function registers must be set properly to enable the PTM pin function.

16-bit Periodic Type TM Block Diagram

Periodic TM Operation

The size of Periodic Type TM is 16-bit wide and its core is a 16-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP and CCRA comparators are 16-bit wide whose value is respectively compared with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 16-bit counter using the application program is to clear the counter by changing the PTON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a PTM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Periodic Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control two output pins. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

Periodic Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Periodic TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 16-bit value, while two read/write register pairs exist to store the internal 16-bit CCRA and CCRP value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PTMC0	PTPAU	PTCK2	PTCK1	PTCK0	PTON	—	—	—
PTMC1	PTM1	PTM0	PTIO1	PTIO0	PTOC	PTPOL	PTCAPTS	PTCCLR
PTMDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMDH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
PTMAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMAH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
PTMRPL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMRPH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8

16-bit Periodic TM Register List
• PTMC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTPAU	PTCK2	PTCK1	PTCK0	PTON	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	0	0	—	—	—

Bit 7 **PTPAU**: PTM Counter Pause control
 0: Run
 1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the PTM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **PTCK2~PTCK0**: Select PTM Counter clock
 000: $f_{SYS}/4$
 001: f_{SYS}
 010: $f_H/16$
 011: $f_H/64$
 100: f_{SUB}
 101: f_{SUB}
 110: PTCK rising edge clock
 111: PTCK falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the PTM. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the Operating Modes and System Clocks section.

Bit 3 **PTON**: PTM Counter On/Off control
 0: Off
 1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the PTM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run while clearing the bit disables the PTM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the PTM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again.

If the PTM is in the Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode then the PTM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the PTOC bit, when the PTON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

• **PTMC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTM1	PTM0	PTIO1	PTIO0	PTOC	PTPOL	PTCAPTS	PTCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PTM1~PTM0**: Select PTM Operating Mode
 00: Compare Match Output Mode
 01: Capture Input Mode
 10: PWM Output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode
 11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the PTM. To ensure reliable operation the PTM should be switched off before any changes are made to the PTM1 and PTM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the PTM output pin state is undefined.

Bit 5~4 **PTIO1~PTIO0**: Select PTM external pin function

Compare Match Output Mode

- 00: No change
- 01: Output low
- 10: Output high
- 11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

- 00: PWM output inactive state
- 01: PWM output active state
- 10: PWM output
- 11: Single Pulse Output

Capture Input Mode

- 00: Input capture at rising edge of PTPI or PTCK
- 01: Input capture at falling edge of PTPI or PTCK
- 10: Input capture at rising/falling edge of PTPI or PTCK
- 11: Input capture disabled

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the PTM external pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the PTM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits determine how the PTM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The PTM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the PTM output pin should be setup using the PTOC bit in the PTMC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the PTOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the PTM output pin when a compare match occurs. After the PTM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the PTON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PTM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits only after the PTM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are changed when the PTM is running.

- Bit 3 **PTOC**: PTM PTP Output control
 Compare Match Output Mode
 0: Initial low
 1: Initial high
 PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode
 0: Active low
 1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the PTM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether PTM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode. It has no effect if the PTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the PTM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low. In the Single Pulse Output Mode it determines the logic level of the PTM output pin when the PTON bit changes from low to high.

- Bit 2 **PTPOL**: PTM PTP Output polarity control
 0: Non-inverted
 1: Inverted

This bit controls the polarity of the PTP output pin. When the bit is set high the PTM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the PTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

- Bit 1 **PTCAPTS**: PTM Capture Trigger Source selection
 0: From PTPI pin
 1: From PTCK pin

- Bit 0 **PTCCLR**: PTM Counter Clear condition selection
 0: Comparator P match
 1: Comparator A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Periodic TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the PTCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The PTCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output, Single Pulse Output or Capture Input Mode.

• **PTMDL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: PTM Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 PTM 16-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMDH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: PTM Counter High Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 PTM 16-bit Counter bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **PTMAL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0:** PTM CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 PTM 16-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMAH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8:** PTM CCRA High Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 PTM 16-bit CCRA bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **PTMRPL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0:** PTM CCRP Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 PTM 16-bit CCRP bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMRPH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8:** PTM CCRP High Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 PTM 16-bit CCRP bit 15 ~ bit 8

Periodic Type TM Operation Modes

The Periodic Type TM can operate in one of five operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode, Capture Input Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the PTM1 and PTM0 bits in the PTMC1 register.

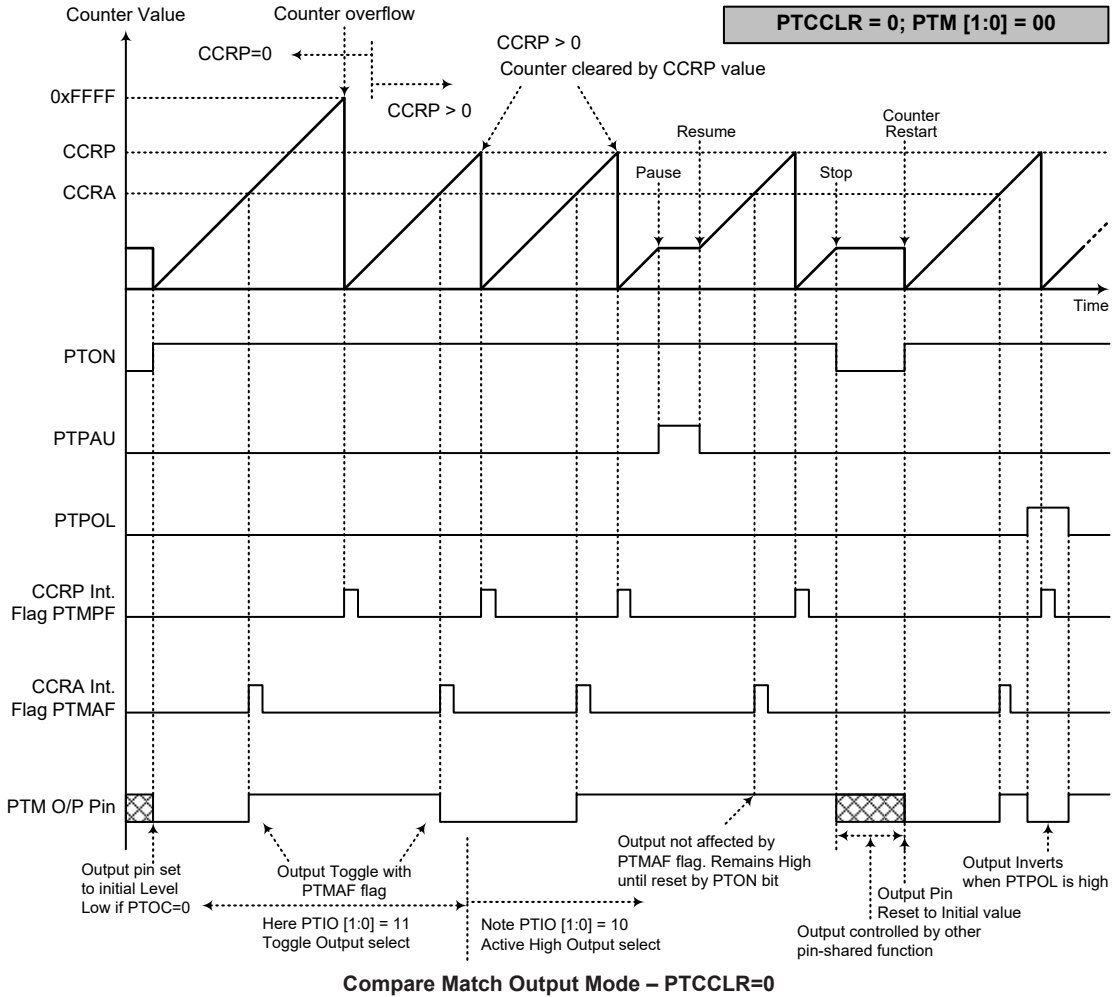
Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the PTCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both PTMAF and PTMPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

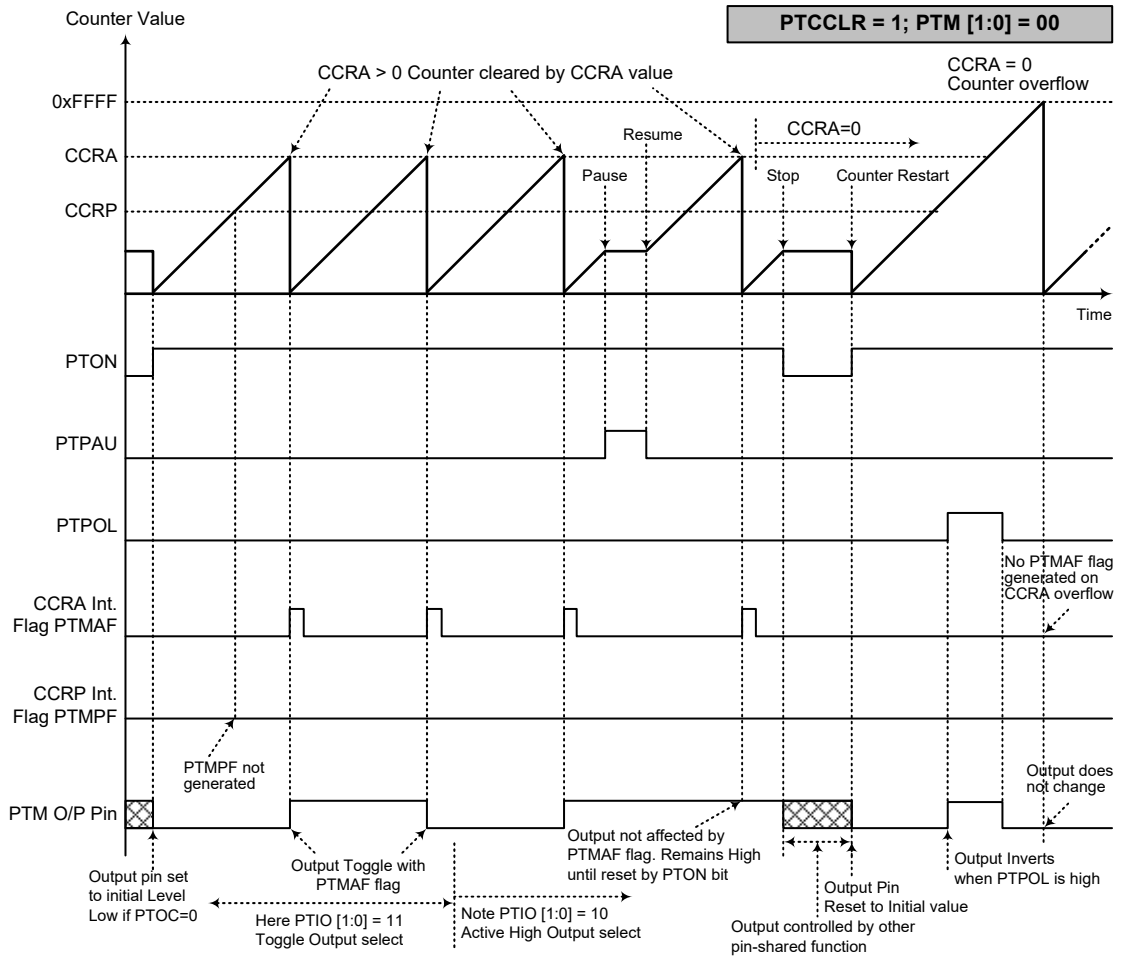
If the PTCCLR bit in the PTMC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the PTMAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when PTCCLR is high no PTMPF interrupt request flag will be generated. In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CCRA cannot be cleared to “0”.

If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 16-bit, FFFF Hex, value, however here the PTMAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the PTM output pin will change state. The PTM output pin condition however only changes state when a PTMAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The PTMPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the PTM output pin. The way in which the PTM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. The PTM output pin can be selected using the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the PTM output pin, which is setup after the PTON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the PTOC bit. Note that if the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.



- Note: 1. With PTCCLR=0, a Comparator P match will clear the counter
 2. The PTM output pin is controlled only by the PTMAF flag
 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a PTON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – PTCCLR=1

- Note: 1. With PTCCLR=1, a Comparator A match will clear the counter
2. The PTM output pin is controlled only by the PTMAF flag
3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a PTON bit rising edge
4. A PTMPF flag is not generated when PTCCLR=1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the PTM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the PTM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the PTM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control, etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the PTM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the PTCCLR bit has no effect as the PWM period. Both of the CCRP and CCRA registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, the CCRP register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the CCRA register is used to control the duty cycle. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The PTOC bit in the PTMC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the PTM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The PTPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

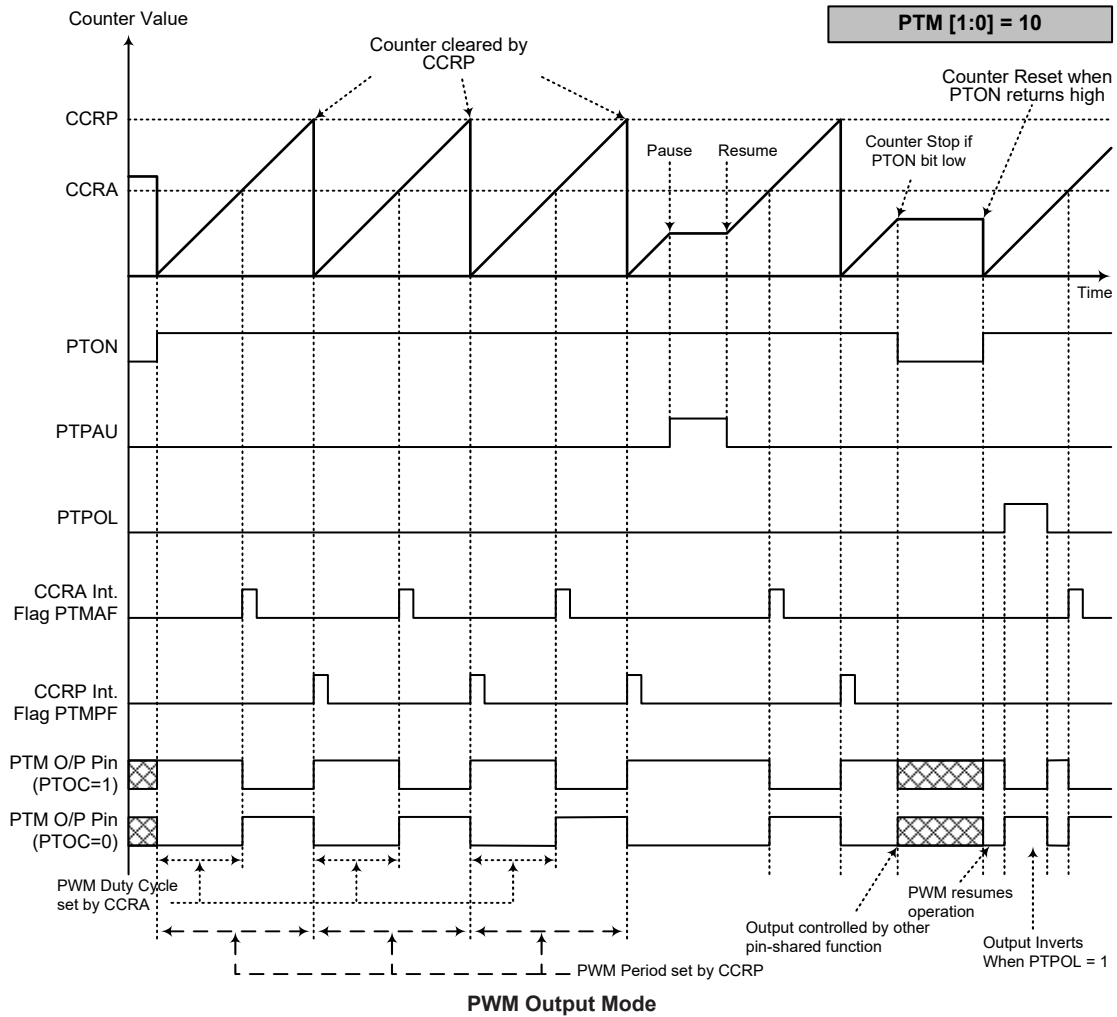
• **16-bit PTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode**

CCRP	1~65535	0
Period	1~65535	65536
Duty	CCRA	

If $f_{SYS}=8\text{MHz}$, PTM clock source select $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP=512 and CCRA=128,

The PTM PWM output frequency = $(f_{SYS}/4)/512=f_{SYS}/2048=4\text{kHz}$, duty=128/512=25%,

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.



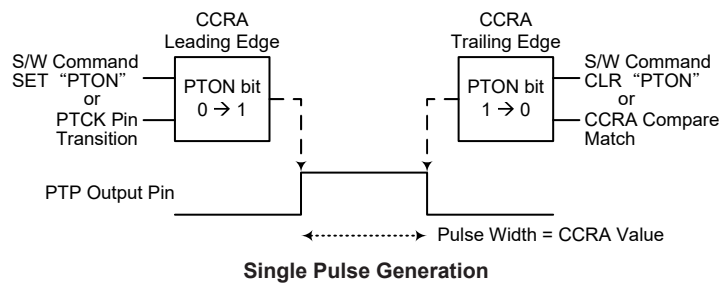
- Note:
1. The counter is cleared by CCRP
 2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
 3. The internal PWM function continues running even when PTIO[1:0]=00 or 01
 4. The PTCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

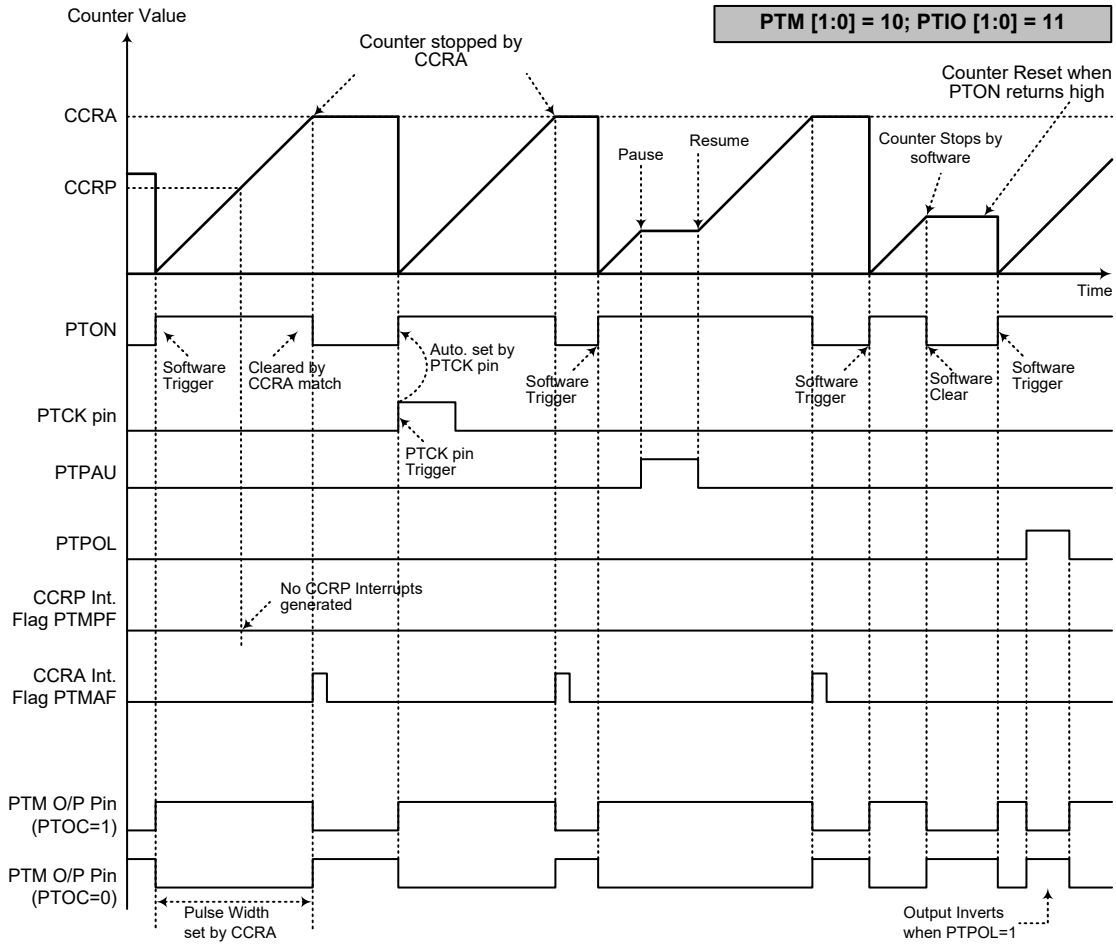
Single Pulse Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits should be set to 11 respectively. The Single Pulse Output Mode, as the name suggests, will generate a single shot pulse on the PTM output pin.

The trigger for the pulse output leading edge is a low to high transition of the PTON bit, which can be implemented using the application program. However in the Single Pulse Output Mode, the PTON bit can also be made to automatically change from low to high using the external PTCK pin, which will in turn initiate the Single Pulse output. When the PTON bit transitions to a high level, the counter will start running and the pulse leading edge will be generated. The PTON bit should remain high when the pulse is in its active state. The generated pulse trailing edge will be generated when the PTON bit is cleared to zero, which can be implemented using the application program or when a compare match occurs from Comparator A.

However a compare match from Comparator A will also automatically clear the PTON bit and thus generate the Single Pulse output trailing edge. In this way the CCRA value can be used to control the pulse width. A compare match from Comparator A will also generate a PTM interrupt. The counter can only be reset back to zero when the PTON bit changes from low to high when the counter restarts. In the Single Pulse Output Mode CCRP is not used. The PTCCLR is not used in this Mode.





Single Pulse Output Mode

- Note: 1. Counter stopped by CCRA
 2. CCRP is not used
 3. The pulse triggered by the PTCK pin or by setting the PTON bit high
 4. A PTCK pin active edge will automatically set the PTON bit high
 5. In the Single Pulse Output Mode, PTIO[1:0] must be set to "11" and cannot be changed

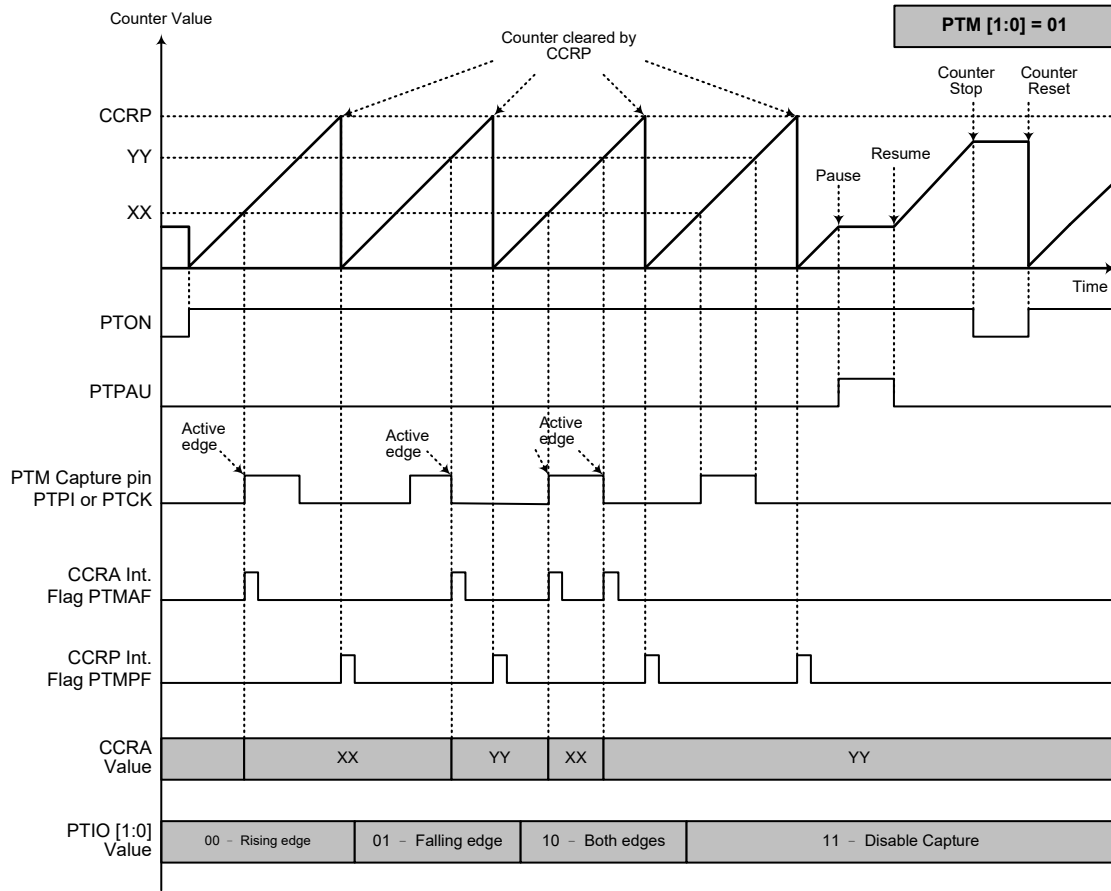
Capture Input Mode

To select this mode bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The external signal is supplied on the PTPI or PTCK pin, selected by the PTCAPTS bit in the PTMC1 register. The input pin active edge can be either a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. The counter is started when the PTON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

When the required edge transition appears on the PTPI or PTCK pin the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA registers and a PTM interrupt generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the PTPI or PTCK pin the counter will continue to free run until the PTON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a PTM interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the PTPI or PTCK pin to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the PTPI or PTCK pin, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run.

There are some considerations that should be noted. If PTCK is used as the capture input source, then it cannot be selected as the PTM clock source. If the captured pulse width is less than 2 timer clock periods, it may be ignored by hardware. After the counter value is latched to the CCRA registers by an active capture edge, the PTMAF flag will be set high after 0.5 timer clock periods. The delay time from the active capture edge received to the action of latching counter value to CCRA registers is less than 1.5 timer clock periods.

The PTCCCLR, PTOC and PTPOL bits are not used in this Mode.



Capture Input Mode

- Note: 1. PTM[1:0]=01 and active edge set by the PTIO[1:0] bits
 2. A PTM Capture input pin active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA
 3. PTCCLR bit not used
 4. No output function – PTOC and PTPOL bits are not used
 5. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero
 6. The capture input mode cannot be used if the selected PTM counter clock is not available

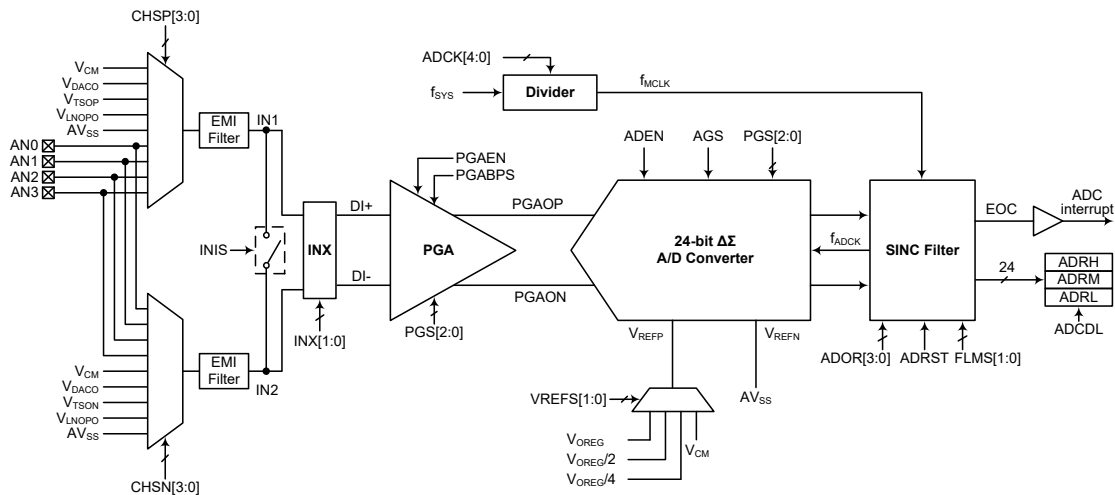
Analog to Digital Converter

The need to interface to real world analog signals is a common requirement for many electronic systems. However, to properly process these signals by a microcontroller, they must first be converted into digital signals by A/D converters. By integrating the A/D conversion electronic circuitry into the microcontroller, the need for external components is reduced significantly with the corresponding follow-on benefits of lower costs and reduced component space requirements.

A/D Converter Overview

The device contains a high accuracy multi-channel 24-bit Delta Sigma analog-to-digital converter which can directly interface to external analog signals, such as that from sensors or other control signals and convert these signals directly into a 24-bit digital value.

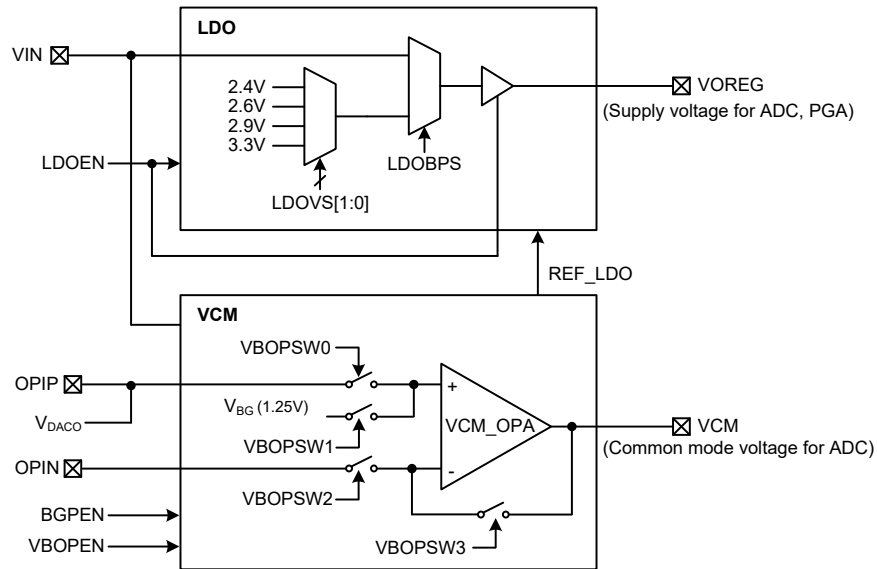
In addition, PGA gain control and A/D converter gain control determine the amplification gain for A/D converter input signal. The designer can select the best gain combination for the desired amplification applied to the input signal. The following block diagram illustrates the A/D converter basic operational function. The A/D converter input channel can be arranged as 18 single-ended A/D converter input channels or 9 differential input channels. The input signal can be amplified by PGA before entering the 24-bit Delta Sigma A/D converter. The A/D converter module will output one bit converted data to SINC filter which can transform the converted one-bit data to 24 bits and store them into the specific data registers. Additionally, the device also provides a temperature sensor to compensate the A/D converter deviation caused by the temperature. With high accuracy and performance, the device is very suitable for differential output sensor applications such as weight measurement scales and other related products.



A/D Converter Structure

Internal Power Supply

The device contains an LDO for the regulated power supply. The accompanying block diagram illustrates the basic functional operation. The internal LDO can provide the fixed voltage for the PGA, A/D converter or the external components. There are four LDO voltage levels, 2.4V, 2.6V, 2.9V or 3.3V, determined by the LDOVS1~LDOVS0 bits in the PWRC register. The LDO function can be controlled by the LDOEN bit and can be powered off to reduce overall power consumption.


Internal Power Supply Block Diagram
• PWRC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LDOEN	BGPEN	CLK_EN	—	TSEN	LDOBPS	LDOVS1	LDOVS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 LDOEN: LDO function enable control

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

Note that both LDOEN and BGPEN should be set high to ensure the LDO function operational.

If the LDO is disabled, there will be no power consumption and the LDO output will be in a low level using a weak internal pull-low resistor.

Bit 6 BGPEN: Bandgap enable control

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

Bit 5 CLK_EN: Internal temperature sensor clock enable control

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

Start-up procedure: TSEN=0, CLK_EN=0 → TSEN=1, CLK_EN=0 → TSEN=1, CLK_EN=1.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3 TSEN: Internal temperature sensor enable control

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

Bit 2 LDOBPS: LDO bypass enable control

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

Bit 1~0 LDOVS1~LDOVS0: LDO output voltage selection

- 00: 2.4V
- 01: 2.6V
- 10: 2.9V
- 11: 3.3V

• **VBOPC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	VBOPEN	—	—	—	VBOPSW3	VBOPSW2	VBOPSW1	VBOPSW0
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	1	0	1	0

- Bit 7 **VBOPEN**: VCM enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 6~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 3 **VBOPSW3**: Switch control bit for VCM_OPA configuration
 0: Off
 1: On
- Bit 2 **VBOPSW2**: Switch control bit for VCM_OPA configuration
 0: Off
 1: On
- Bit 1 **VBOPSW1**: Switch control bit for VCM_OPA configuration
 0: Off
 1: On
- Bit0 **VBOPSW0**: Switch control bit for VCM_OPA configuration
 0: Off
 1: On

When this bit is set high, the D/A converter output can be used as the positive input of the OPA in the VCM if the D/A converter is enabled. Care should be taken that in such case, the original external input on the OPIP pin, if exists, must be removed, otherwise this will result in unpredictable situations.

Note: This OPA can be used for signal amplification according to specific user requirements. With specific control registers, some OPA related applications can be more flexible and easier to be implemented. The initial state of OPA is a voltage follower for V_{BG} (1.25V).

A/D Converter Data Rate Definition

The Delta Sigma A/D converter data rate can be calculated using the following equation:

Data Rate for SINC2

$$= f_{ADCK}/(2 \times OSR)$$

$$= (f_{MCLK}/N)/(2 \times OSR)$$

$$= f_{MCLK}/(N \times 2 \times OSR)$$

Data Rate for SINC3

$$= f_{ADCK}/OSR$$

$$= (f_{MCLK}/N)/OSR$$

$$= f_{MCLK}/(N \times OSR)$$

f_{ADCK} : A/D converter clock frequency, derived from f_{MCLK}/N .

f_{MCLK} : A/D converter clock source, derived from f_{SYS} or $f_{SYS}/2/(ADCK+1)$ using the ADCK bit field.

N: A constant divide factor equal to 12 or 30 determined by the FLMS bit field.

OSR: Oversampling rate determined by the ADOR bit field.

For example, if a data rate of 8Hz is desired, an f_{MCLK} clock source with a frequency of 4MHz A/D converter can be selected. Then set the FLMS field to “00” to obtain an “N” equal to 30.

For the SINC2 filter, set the ADOR field to “0010” to select an oversampling rate equal to 8192. Therefore, the Data Rate = $4MHz/(30 \times 2 \times 8192) = 8Hz$.

For the SINC3 filter, set the ADOR field to “0001” to select an oversampling rate equal to 16384. Therefore, the Data Rate = $4MHz/(30 \times 16384) = 8Hz$.

A/D Converter Register Description

Overall operation of the A/D converter is controlled by using a series of registers. A control register named as PWRC is used to control the power supply related settings for the PGA and A/D converter, another control register VBOPC is used to control the switches for OPA configuration in the VCM, these registers are described in the “Internal Power Supply” section. A control register named LNOPC is used to control the low noise operational amplifier. Three registers are used to control the D/A converter operation. Three read only registers exist to store the A/D converter data 24-bit value. The remaining registers are control registers which setup the gain selections and control functions of the PGA and A/D converter.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PWRC	LDOEN	BGPEN	CLK_EN	—	TSEN	LDOBPS	LDOVS1	LDOVS0
PGAC0	VREFS1	VREFS0	AGS	PGAEN	PGABPS	PGS2	PGS1	PGS0
PGAC1	INIS	INX1	INX0	—	—	—	—	—
PGACS	CHSN3	CHSN2	CHSN1	CHSN0	CHSP3	CHSP2	CHSP1	CHSP0
ADRL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
ADRM	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
ADRH	D23	D22	D21	D20	D19	D18	D17	D16
ADCR0	SINCS	D6	FLMS1	FLMS0	ADOR3	ADOR2	ADOR1	ADOR0
ADCR1	—	—	ADCDL	EOC	ADRST	ADEN	—	—
ADCS	—	—	—	ADCK4	ADCK3	ADCK2	ADCK1	ADCK0
VBOPC	VBOPEN	—	—	—	VBOPSW3	VBOPSW2	VBOPSW1	VBOPSW0
DSDACC	DSDACEN	DSDACVRS	—	—	—	—	—	—
DSDAH	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4
DSDAL	—	—	—	—	D3	D2	D1	D0
LNOPC	LNOPEN	—	—	—	—	LNOPP	LNOPSW1	LNOPSW0

A/D Converter Register List

Programmable Gain Amplifier Registers – PGAC0, PGAC1, PGACS

There are three registers related to the programmable gain control, PGAC0, PGAC1 and PGACS. The PGAC0 register is used to select the PGA gain, the A/D Converter gain and the A/D converter reference voltage pair as well as control the PGA enable/disable and PGA bypass function. The PGAC1 register is used to define the input connection. In addition, the PGACS register is used to select the PGA inputs. Therefore, the input channels have to be determined by the CHSP3~CHSP0 and CHSN3~CHSN0 bits to determine which analog channel input pins, temperature sensor inputs or internal power supply are actually connected to the internal differential A/D converter.

• PGAC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	VREFS1	VREFS0	AGS	PGAEN	PGABPS	PGS2	PGS1	PGS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **VREFS1~VREFS0**: A/D converter reference voltage pair selection

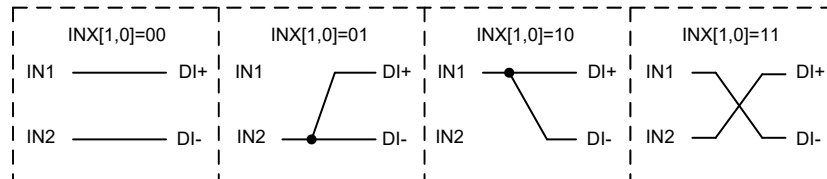
- 00: Internal reference voltage pair – V_{CM} & AV_{SS}
- 01: Internal reference voltage pair – V_{OREG} & AV_{SS}
- 10: Internal reference voltage pair – $V_{OREG} \times 1/2$ & AV_{SS}
- 11: Internal reference voltage pair – $V_{OREG} \times 1/4$ & AV_{SS}

- Bit 5 **AGS**: A/D converter PGAOP/PGAON differential input signal gain selection
 0: ADGN=1
 1: ADGN=2
- Bit 4 **PGAEN**: PGA enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- This bit controls the overall enable/disable function of the PGA circuits. The related functions will only be available when the PGAEN is set high.
- Bit 3 **PGABPS**: PGA bypass control
 0: Normal mode
 1: Bypass PGA mode
- Bit 2~0 **PGS2~PGS0**: PGA DI+/DI- differential channel input gain selection
 000: PGAGN=1
 001: PGAGN=2
 010: PGAGN=4
 011: PGAGN=8
 100: PGAGN=16
 101: PGAGN=32
 110: PGAGN=64
 111: PGAGN=128

• **PGAC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	INIS	INX1	INX0	—	—	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	—	—	—	—	—

- Bit 7 **INIS**: The selected input ends, IN1/IN2, internal connection control
 0: Not connected
 1: Connected
- Bit 6~5 **INX1~INX0**: The selected input ends, IN1/IN2, and the PGA differential input ends, DI+/DI-, connection control



- Bit 4~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

• **PGACS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CHSN3	CHSN2	CHSN1	CHSN0	CHSP3	CHSP2	CHSP1	CHSP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~4 **CHSN3~CHSN0**: Negative input end IN2 selection
 0000: AN0
 0001: AN1
 0010: AN2
 0011: AN3
 0100~0111: Reserved
 1000: V_{CM}
 1001: V_{DACO}
 1010: Temperature sensor output – V_{TSON}

1011: V_{LNOPO}
1100~1110: Reserved
1111: AV_{SS}

These bits are used to select the negative input, IN2. If the IN2 input is selected as a single end input, the V_{CM} voltage must be selected as the positive input on IN1 for single end input applications. It is recommended that when the V_{TSOP} signal is selected as the negative input, the V_{TSOP} signal should be selected as the positive input for proper operations.

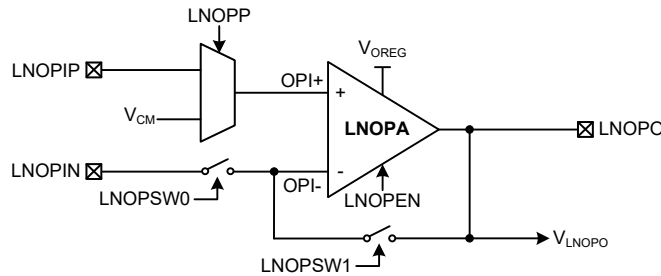
Bit 3~0 **CHSP3~CHSP0**: Positive input end IN1 selection

0000: AN0
0001: AN1
0010: AN2
0011: AN3
0100~0111: Reserved
1000: V_{CM}
1001: V_{DAC0}
1010: Temperature sensor output – V_{TSOP}
1011: V_{LNOPO}
1100~1110: Reserved
1111: AV_{SS}

These bits are used to select the positive input, IN1. If the IN1 input is selected as a single end input, the V_{CM} voltage must be selected as the negative input on IN2 for single end input applications. It is recommended that when the V_{TSOP} signal is selected as the positive input, the V_{TSOP} signal should be selected as the negative input for proper operations.

Low Noise Operational Amplifier Control Register – LNOPC

There is a fully integrated low noise operational amplifier in the device. This OPA can be used for signal amplification according to specific user requirements. The OPA can be disabled or enabled entirely under software control using internal register. With specific control register, some OPA related applications can be more flexible and easier to be implemented, such as Unit Gain Buffer, Non-Inverting Amplifier, Inverting Amplifier and various kinds of filters, etc.



• LNOPC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LNOPEN	—	—	—	—	LNOPP	LNOPSW1	LNOPSW0
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

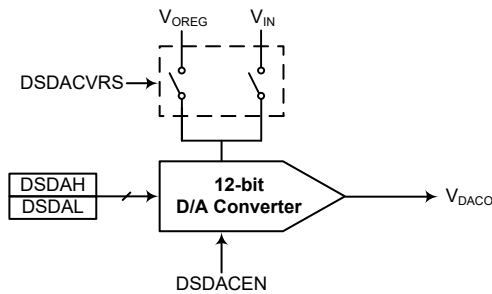
Bit 7 **LNOPEN**: LNOPA enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”

- Bit 2 **LNOPP**: LNOPA positive input end OPI+ selection
 0: LNOPIP pin
 1: V_{CM}
- Bit 1 **LNOPSW1**: Switch control bit for LNOPA configuration
 0: Off
 1: On
- Bit 0 **LNOPSW0**: Switch control bit for LNOPA configuration
 0: Off
 1: On

D/A Converter Registers – DSDAH, DSDAL, DSDACC

The device has integrated a 12-bit D/A converter, whose output can be used as the A/D converter input signal. By configuring the specific control register, the D/A converter output can be used as the positive input signal of the OPA in the VCM if the D/A converter is enabled. There are three registers related to the D/A converter operation. Two data registers are used for D/A converter output control, one control register is used for D/A converter enable control and reference voltage selection.



• **DSDAL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	D3	D2	D3	D0
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3~0 **D3~D0**: 12-bit D/A converter output control code bit 3 ~ bit 0

Note: Writing to this register only writes the low byte data to a shadow buffer. When writing to the DSDAH register, the shadow buffer data will also be copied into the DSDAL register.

• **DSDAH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D11~D4**: 12-bit D/A converter output control code bit 11 ~ bit 4

• DSDACC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	DSDACEN	DSDACVRS	—	—	—	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—
POR	0	0	—	—	—	—	—	—

Bit 7 **DSDACEN**: D/A converter enable control

0: Disable

1: Enable

Bit 6 **DSDACVRS**: D/A converter reference voltage selection

0: D/A converter reference voltage comes from V_{OREG}

1: D/A converter reference voltage comes from V_{IN}

Bit 5~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

A/D Converter Data Registers – ADRL, ADRM, ADRH

The 24-bit Delta Sigma A/D converter requires three data registers to store the converted value. These are a high byte register, known as ADRH, a middle byte register, known as ADRM, and a low byte register, known as ADRL. After the conversion process takes place, these registers can be directly read by the microcontroller to obtain the digitised conversion value. D0~D23 are the A/D conversion result data bits.

• ADRL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: A/D conversion data register bit 7 ~ bit 0

• ADRM Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: A/D conversion data register bit 15 ~ bit 8

• ADRH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D23	D22	D21	D20	D19	D18	D17	D16
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~0 **D23~D16**: A/D conversion data register bit 23 ~ bit 16

A/D Converter Control Registers – ADCR0, ADCR1, ADCS

To control the function and operation of the A/D converter, three control registers known as ADCR0, ADCR1 and ADCS are provided. These 8-bit registers define functions such as the A/D converter clock source, the A/D converter output data rate as well as controlling the power-up function and monitoring the A/D converter end of conversion status.

• **ADCR0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SINCS	D6	FLMS1	FLMS0	ADOR3	ADOR2	ADOR1	ADOR0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **SINCS**: SINC selection
 0: SINC3 filter
 1: SINC2 filter
- Bit 6 **D6**: Reserved
- Bit 5~4 **FLMS1~FLMS0**: A/D converter clock f_{ADCK} selection
 00: $f_{ADCK}=f_{MCLK}/30, N=30$
 10: $f_{ADCK}=f_{MCLK}/12, N=12$
 Others: Reserved
- Bit 3~0 **ADOR3~ADOR0**: A/D conversion oversampling rate selection
 0000: Oversampling rate OSR = 32768
 0001: Oversampling rate OSR = 16384
 0010: Oversampling rate OSR = 8192
 0011: Oversampling rate OSR = 4096
 0100: Oversampling rate OSR = 2048
 0101: Oversampling rate OSR = 1024
 0110: Oversampling rate OSR = 512
 0111: Oversampling rate OSR = 256
 1000: Oversampling rate OSR = 128
 Others: Reserved

• **ADCR1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	ADCDL	EOC	ADRST	ADEN	—	—
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	—	—

- Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5 **ADCDL**: A/D converted data latch function enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

If the A/D converted data latch function is enabled, the latest converted data value will be latched and will not be updated by any subsequent converted results until this function is disabled. Although the converted data is latched into the data registers, the A/D converter circuits remain operational, but will not generate an interrupt and the EOC will not change. It is recommended that this bit should be set high before reading the converted data from the ADRL, ADRM and ADRH registers. After the converted data has been read out, the bit can then be cleared to zero to disable the A/D converter data latch function and allow further conversion values to be stored. In this way, the possibility of obtaining undesired data during A/D converter conversions can be prevented.

- Bit 4 **EOC**: End of A/D conversion flag
 0: A/D conversion in progress
 1: A/D conversion ended
 This bit must be cleared by software.
- Bit 3 **ADRST**: A/D converter software reset enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
 This bit is used to reset the A/D converter internal digital SINC filter. This bit is cleared to zero for A/D normal operations. However, if set high, the internal digital SINC filter will be reset and the current A/D converted data will be aborted. A new A/D data conversion process will not be initiated until this bit is cleared to zero again.
- Bit 2 **ADEN**: A/D converter function enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
 This bit controls the A/D converter function enable/disable. This bit should be set high to enable the A/D converter. If the bit is cleared to zero then the A/D converter will be switched off reducing the device power consumption. As the A/D converter will consume a limited amount of power, even when not executing a conversion, this may be an important consideration in power sensitive battery powered applications.
- Bit 1~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

• **ADCS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	ADCK4	ADCK3	ADCK2	ADCK1	ADCK0
R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~5 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 4~0 **ADCK4~ADCK0**: A/D converter clock source f_{MCLK} setup
 00000~11110: $f_{MCLK} = f_{SYS}/2 / (ADCK[4:0]+1)$
 11111: $f_{MCLK} = f_{SYS}$

A/D Converter Operation

The ADRST bit in the ADCR1 register is used to start and reset the A/D converter after power on. When the microcontroller changes this bit from low to high and then low again, an analog to digital conversion in the SINC filter will be initiated. After this setup is completed, the A/D Converter is ready for operation. This bit is used to control the overall start operation of the internal analog to digital converter.

The EOC bit in the ADCR1 register is used to indicate when the analog to digital conversion process is complete. This bit will be automatically set high by the microcontroller after a conversion cycle has ended. In addition, the corresponding A/D converter interrupt request flag will be set in the interrupt control register, and if the interrupts are enabled, an appropriate internal interrupt signal will be generated. This A/D converter internal interrupt signal will direct the program flow to the associated A/D converter internal interrupt address for processing. If the A/D converter internal interrupt is disabled, the microcontroller can poll the EOC bit in the ADCR1 register to check whether it has been set to “1” as an alternative method of detecting the end of an A/D conversion cycle. The A/D converted data will be updated continuously by the new converted data. If the A/D converted data latch function is enabled, the latest converted data will be latched and the following new converted data will be discarded until this data latch function is disabled.

The clock source for the A/D converter should be typically fixed at a value of 4MHz, which originates from the system clock f_{SYS} , and can be chosen to be either f_{SYS} or a subdivided version of f_{SYS} . The division ratio value is determined by the ADCK4~ADCK0 bits in the ADCS register to obtain a 4MHz clock source for the A/D Converter.

The differential reference voltage supply to the A/D Converter can be supplied from either the internal reference sources, V_{CM} and AV_{SS} , or from V_{OREG} and AV_{SS} , or from a subdivided version of V_{OREG} and AV_{SS} . The desired selection is made using the VREFS1~VREFS0 bits in the PGAC0 register.

Summary of A/D Conversion Steps

The following summarises the individual steps that should be executed in order to implement an A/D conversion process.

- Step 1
Enable the power LDO for PGA and A/D converter.
- Step 2
Select the PGA gain and the A/D converter gain as well as the A/D converter reference voltage pair by the PGAC0 register.
- Step 3
Select the PGA input connection by the PGAC1 register.
- Step 4
Select the required A/D conversion clock source by correctly programming the ADCK4~ADCK0 bits in the ADCS register.
- Step 5
Select output data rate by configuring the ADOR2~ADOR0 and FLMS1~FLMS0 bits in the ADCR0 register.
- Step 6
Select which channel is to be connected to the internal PGA by correctly programming the CHSP3~CHSP0 and CHSN3~CHSN0 bits which are also contained in the PGACS register.
- Step 7
Enable the A/D converter by setting the ADEN bit in the ADCR1 register high.
- Step 8
Reset the A/D converter by setting the ADRST bit in the ADCR1 register high and then clearing this bit to zero to release the reset status.
- Step 9
If the A/D converter interrupt is to be used, the related interrupt control registers must be correctly configured to ensure the A/D converter interrupt function is active. The master interrupt control bit, EMI, and the A/D converter interrupt bit, ADE, must both be set high to do this.
- Step 10
To check when the analog to digital conversion process is complete, the EOC bit in the ADCR1 register can be polled. The conversion process is complete when this bit goes high. When this occurs the A/D converter data registers ADRL, ADRM and ADRH can be read to obtain the conversion value. As an alternative method, if the interrupts are enabled and the stack is not full, the program can wait for an A/D converter interrupt to occur.

Note: When checking for the end of the conversion process, if the method of polling the EOC bit in the ADCR1 register is used, the interrupt enable step above can be omitted.

Programming Considerations

During microcontroller operations where the A/D converter is not being used, the A/D converter internal circuitry can be switched off to reduce power consumption, by clearing the ADEN bit in the ADCR1 register to zero. When this happens, the internal A/D converter circuits will not consume power irrespective of what analog voltage is applied to their input lines.

A/D Converter Transfer Function

The device contains a 24-bit Delta Sigma A/D converter and its full-scale converted digitized value is from 8388607 to -8388608 in decimal value. The converted data format is formed using a two’s complement binary value. The MSB of the converted data is the signed bit. Since the full-scale analog input value is equal to the differential reference input voltage, ΔVR_{\pm} , selected by the VREFS1~VREFS0 bits in the PGAC0 register, this gives a single bit analog input value of ΔVR_{\pm} divided by 8388608.

$$1 \text{ LSB} = \Delta VR_{\pm} / 8388608$$

The A/D Converter input voltage value can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\Delta SI_I = PGAGN \times ADGN \times \Delta DI_{\pm}$$

$$ADC_Conversion_Data = (\Delta SI_I / \Delta VR_{\pm}) \times K$$

Where K is equal to 2^{23}

- Note: 1. The PGAGN and ADGN values are decided by the PGS[2:0] and AGS control bits
 2. ΔSI_I : Differential Input Signal after amplification
 3. PGAGN: Programmable Gain Amplifier gain
 4. ADGN: A/D Converter gain
 5. ΔDI_{\pm} : Differential input signal derived from external channels or internal signals
 6. ΔVR_{\pm} : Differential Reference voltage

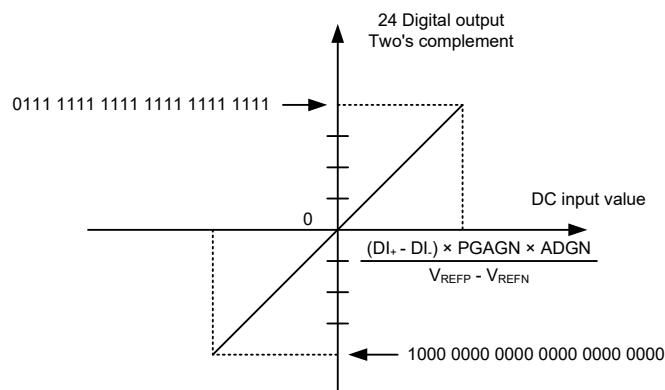
Due to the digital system design of the Delta Sigma A/D Converter, the maximum A/D converted value is 8388607 and the minimum value is -8388608. Therefore, there is a middle value of 0. The ADC_Conversion_Data equation illustrates this range of converted data variation.

A/D Conversion Data (2's complement, Hexadecimal)	Decimal Value
0x7FFFFFFF	8388607
0x800000	-8388608

A/D Conversion Data Range

The above A/D conversion data table illustrates the range of A/D conversion data.

The following diagram shows the relationship between the DC input value and the A/D converted data which is presented using Two’s Complement.



A/D Converted Data

The A/D converted data is related to the input voltage and the PGA selections. The format of the A/D Converter output is a two's complement binary code. The length of this output code is 24 bits and the MSB is a signed bit. When the MSB is "0", this represents a "positive" input. If the MSB is "1", this represents a "negative" input. The maximum value is 8388607 and the minimum value is -8388608. If the input signal is greater than the maximum value, the converted data is limited to 8388607, and if the input signal is less than the minimum value, the converted data is limited to -8388608.

A/D Converted Data to Voltage

The converted data can be recovered using the following equations:

If MSB = 0 – Positive Converted data

$$\text{Input Voltage} = \frac{(\text{Converted_data}) \times \text{LSB}}{\text{PGAGN} \times \text{ADGN}}$$

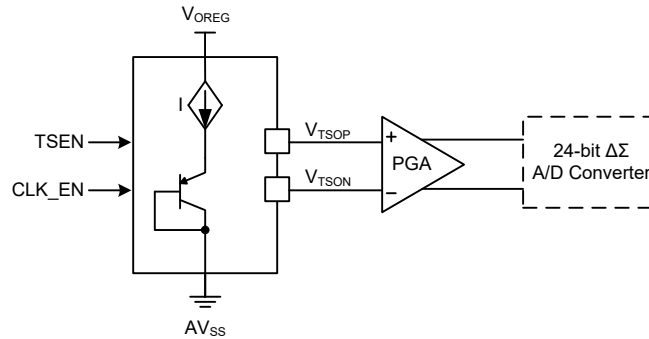
If the MSB = 1 – Negative Converted data

$$\text{Input voltage} = \frac{(\text{Two's_complement_of_Converted_data}) \times \text{LSB}}{\text{PGAGN} \times \text{ADGN}}$$

Note: Two's complement = One's complement + 1

Temperature Sensor

An internal temperature sensor is integrated within the device to allow compensation for temperature effects. By selecting the PGA input channels to the V_{TSOP} and V_{TSON} signals, the A/D Converter can obtain temperature information and allow compensation to be carried out on the A/D converted data. The following block diagram illustrates the functional operation for the temperature sensor.



Temperature Sensor Structure

Serial Interface Module – SIM

The device contains a Serial Interface Module, which includes both the four-line SPI interface or two-line I²C interface types, to allow an easy method of communication with external peripheral hardware. Having relatively simple communication protocols, these serial interface types allow the microcontroller to interface to external SPI or I²C based hardware such as sensors, Flash or EEPROM memory, etc. The SIM interface pins are pin-shared with other I/O pins and therefore the SIM interface functional pins must first be selected using the corresponding pin-shared function selection bits. As both interface types share the same pins and registers, the choice of whether the SPI or I²C type is used is made using the SIM operating mode control bits, named SIM2~SIM0, in the SIMC0 register. These pull-high resistors of the SIM pin-shared I/O pins are selected using pull-high control registers when the SIM function is enabled and the corresponding pins are used as SIM input pins.

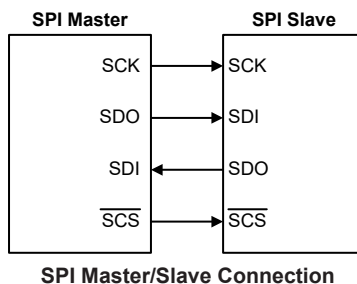
SPI Interface

The SPI interface is often used to communicate with external peripheral devices such as sensors, Flash or EEPROM memory devices, etc. Originally developed by Motorola, the four line SPI interface is a synchronous serial data interface that has a relatively simple communication protocol simplifying the programming requirements when communicating with external hardware devices.

The communication is full duplex and operates as a slave/master type, where the device can be either master or slave. Although the SPI interface specification can control multiple slave devices from a single master, the device provided only one \overline{SCS} pin. If the master needs to control multiple slave devices from a single master, the master can use I/O pin to select the slave devices.

SPI Interface Operation

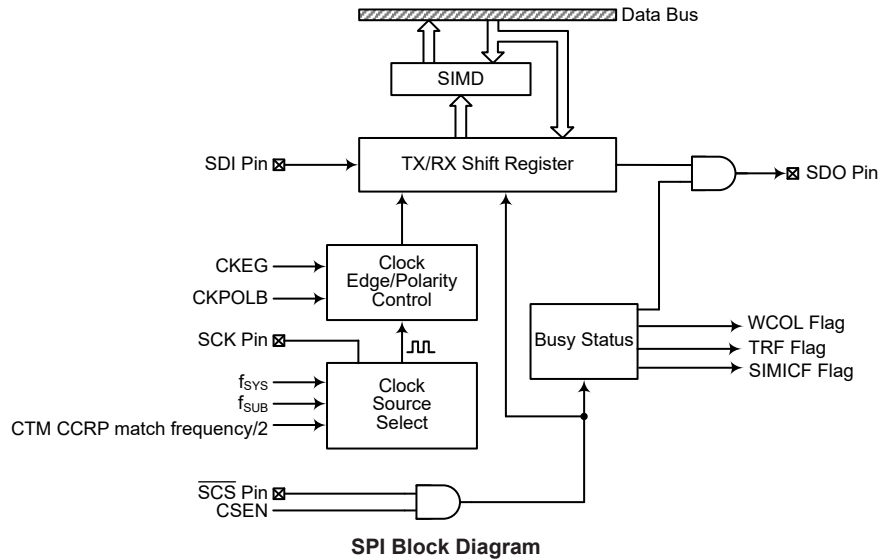
The SPI interface is a full duplex synchronous serial data link. It is a four line interface with pin names SDI, SDO, SCK and \overline{SCS} Pins SDI and SDO are the Serial Data Input and Serial Data Output lines, SCK is the Serial Clock line and \overline{SCS} is the Slave Select line. As the SPI interface pins are pin-shared with normal I/O pins and with the I²C function pins, the SPI interface pins must first be selected by configuring the pin-shared function selection bits and setting the correct bits in the SIMC0 and SIMC2 registers. After the desired SPI configuration has been set it can be disabled or enabled using the SIMEN bit in the SIMC0 register. Communication between devices connected to the SPI interface is carried out in a slave/master mode with all data transfer initiations being implemented by the master. The Master also controls the clock signal. As the device only contains a single \overline{SCS} pin only one slave device can be utilized. The \overline{SCS} pin is controlled by software, set CSEN bit to 1 to enable \overline{SCS} pin function, set CSEN bit to 0 the \overline{SCS} pin will be floating state.



The SPI function in this device offers the following features:

- Full duplex synchronous data transfer
- Both Master and Slave modes
- LSB first or MSB first data transmission modes
- Transmission complete flag
- Rising or falling active clock edge

The status of the SPI interface pins is determined by a number of factors such as whether the device is in the master or slave mode and upon the condition of certain control bits such as CSEN and SIMEN.



SPI Registers

There are three internal registers which control the overall operation of the SPI interface. These are the SIMD data register and two registers SIMC0 and SIMC2.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SIMC0	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
SIMC2	D7	D6	CKPOLB	CKEG	MLS	CSEN	WCOL	TRF
SIMD	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

SPI Register List

SPI Data Register

The SIMD register is used to store the data being transmitted and received. The same register is used by both the SPI and I²C functions. Before the device writes data to the SPI bus, the actual data to be transmitted must be placed in the SIMD register. After the data is received from the SPI bus, the device can read it from the SIMD register. Any transmission or reception of data from the SPI bus must be made via the SIMD register.

• SIMD Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

“x”: unknown

 Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: SIM data register bit 7 ~ bit 0

SPI Control Registers

There are also two control registers for the SPI interface, SIMC0 and SIMC2. Note that the SIMC2 register also has the name SIMA which is used by the I²C function. The SIMC1 register is not used by the SPI function, only by the I²C function. Register SIMC0 is used to control the enable/disable function and to set the data transmission clock frequency. Register SIMC2 is used for other control functions such as LSB/MSB selection, write collision flag, etc.

• SIMC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 **SIM2~SIM0**: SIM Operating Mode Control
 000: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/4$
 001: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/16$
 010: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/64$
 011: SPI master mode; SPI clock is f_{SUB}
 100: SPI master mode; SPI clock is CTM CCRP match frequency/2
 101: SPI slave mode
 110: I²C slave mode
 111: Non SIM function

These bits setup the overall operating mode of the SIM function. As well as selecting if the I²C or SPI function, they are used to control the SPI Master/Slave selection and the SPI Master clock frequency. The SPI clock is a function of the system clock but can also be chosen to be sourced from CTM and f_{SUB} . If the SPI Slave Mode is selected then the clock will be supplied by an external Master device.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3~2 **SIMDEB1~SIMDEB0**: I²C Debounce Time Selection

The SIMDEB1~SIMDEB0 bits are only used in the I²C mode and the detailed definition is described in the I²C section.

Bit 1 **SIMEN**: SIM Enable Control

0: Disable
 1: Enable

The bit is the overall on/off control for the SIM interface. When the SIMEN bit is cleared to zero to disable the SIM interface, the SDI, SDO, SCK and \overline{SCS} , or SDA and SCL lines will lose their SPI or I²C function and the SIM operating current will be reduced to a minimum value. When the bit is high the SIM interface is enabled. If the SIM is configured to operate as an SPI interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits, the contents of the SPI control registers will remain at the previous settings when the SIMEN bit changes from low to high and should therefore be first initialised by the application program. If the SIM is configured to operate as an I²C interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits and the SIMEN bit changes from low to high, the contents of the I²C control bits such as HTX and TXAK will remain at the previous settings and should therefore be first initialised by the application program while the relevant I²C flags such as HCF, HAAS, HBB, SRW and RXAK will be set to their default states.

Bit 0 **SIMICF**: SIM SPI slave mode Incomplete Transfer Flag
 0: SIM SPI slave mode incomplete condition not occurred
 1: SIM SPI slave mode incomplete condition occurred

This bit is only available when the SIM is configured to operate in an SPI slave mode. If the SPI operates in the slave mode with the SIMEN and CSEN bits both being set to 1 but the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ line is pulled high by the external master device before the SPI data transfer is completely finished, the SIMICF bit will be set to 1 together with the TRF bit. When this condition occurs, the corresponding interrupt will occur if the interrupt function is enabled. However, the TRF bit will not be set to 1 if the SIMICF bit is set to 1 by software application program.

• **SIMC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	CKPOLB	CKEG	MLS	CSEN	WCOL	TRF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **Undefined bits**
 These bits can be read or written by the application program.

Bit 5 **CKPOLB**: SPI clock line base condition selection
 0: The SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive.
 1: The SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive.

The CKPOLB bit determines the base condition of the clock line, if the bit is high, then the SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive. When the CKPOLB bit is low, then the SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive.

Bit 4 **CKEG**: SPI SCK clock active edge type selection
 CKPOLB=0
 0: SCK is high base level and data capture at SCK rising edge
 1: SCK is high base level and data capture at SCK falling edge
 CKPOLB=1
 0: SCK is low base level and data capture at SCK falling edge
 1: SCK is low base level and data capture at SCK rising edge

The CKEG and CKPOLB bits are used to setup the way that the clock signal outputs and inputs data on the SPI bus. These two bits must be configured before data transfer is executed otherwise an erroneous clock edge may be generated. The CKPOLB bit determines the base condition of the clock line, if the bit is high, then the SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive. When the CKPOLB bit is low, then the SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive. The CKEG bit determines active clock edge type which depends upon the condition of CKPOLB bit.

Bit 3 **MLS**: SPI data shift order
 0: LSB first
 1: MSB first

This is the data shift select bit and is used to select how the data is transferred, either MSB or LSB first. Setting the bit high will select MSB first and low for LSB first.

Bit 2 **CSEN**: SPI $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

The CSEN bit is used as an enable/disable for the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin. If this bit is low, then the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin will be disabled and placed into a floating condition. If the bit is high, the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin will be enabled and used as a select pin.

Bit 1 **WCOL**: SPI write collision flag
 0: No collision
 1: Collision

The WCOL flag is used to detect whether a data collision has occurred or not. If this bit is high, it means that data has been attempted to be written to the SIMD register during a data transfer operation. This writing operation will be ignored if data is being transferred. This bit can be cleared by the application program.

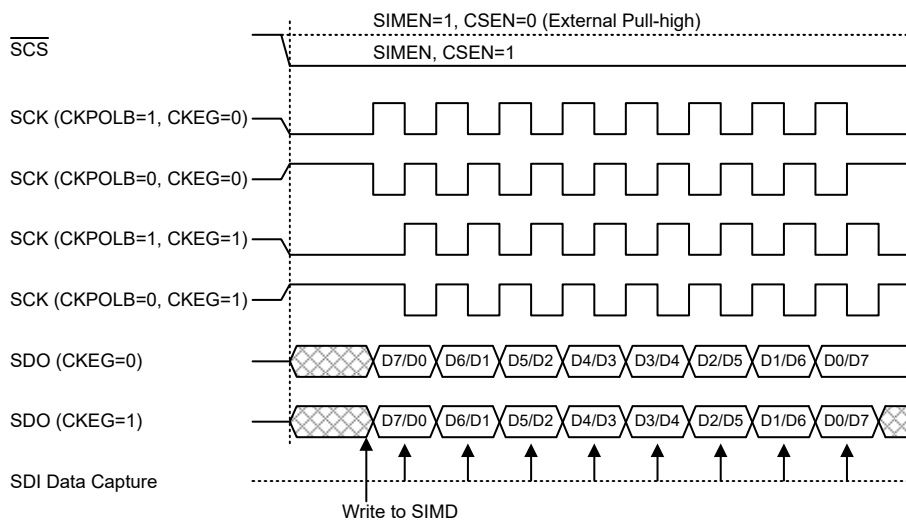
Bit 0 **TRF**: SPI Transmit/Receive complete flag
 0: SPI data is being transferred
 1: SPI data transfer is completed

The TRF bit is the Transmit/Receive Complete flag and is set to 1 automatically when an SPI data transfer is completed, but must be cleared to 0 by the application program. It can be used to generate an interrupt.

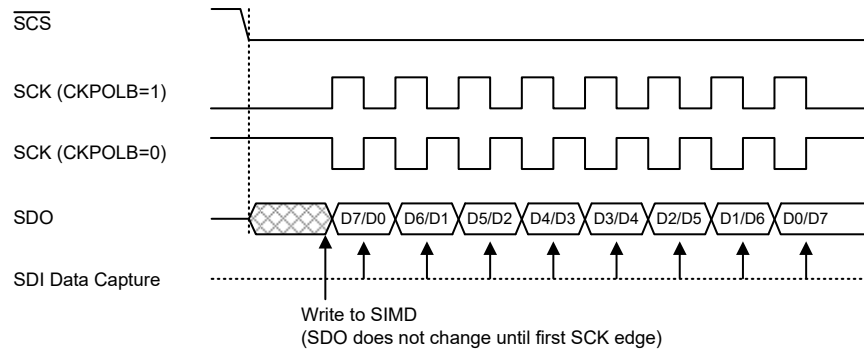
SPI Communication

After the SPI interface is enabled by setting the SIMEN bit high, then in the Master Mode, when data is written to the SIMD register, transmission/reception will begin simultaneously. When the data transfer is complete, the TRF flag will be set automatically, but must be cleared using the application program. In the Slave Mode, when the clock signal from the master has been received, any data in the SIMD register will be transmitted and any data on the SDI pin will be shifted into the SIMD register. The master should output a SCS signal to enable the slave devices before a clock signal is provided. The slave data to be transferred should be well prepared at the appropriate moment relative to the SCK signal depending upon the configurations of the CKPOLB bit and CKEG bit. The accompanying timing diagram shows the relationship between the slave data and SCK signal for various configurations of the CKPOLB and CKEG bits.

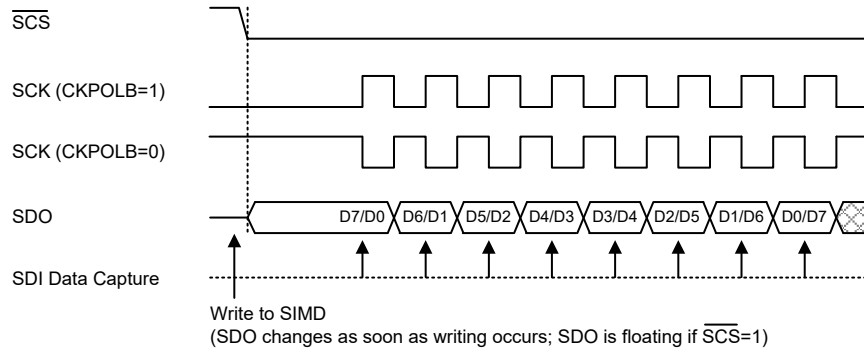
The SPI will continue to function in certain IDLE Modes if the clock source used by the SPI interface is still active.



SPI Master Mode Timing

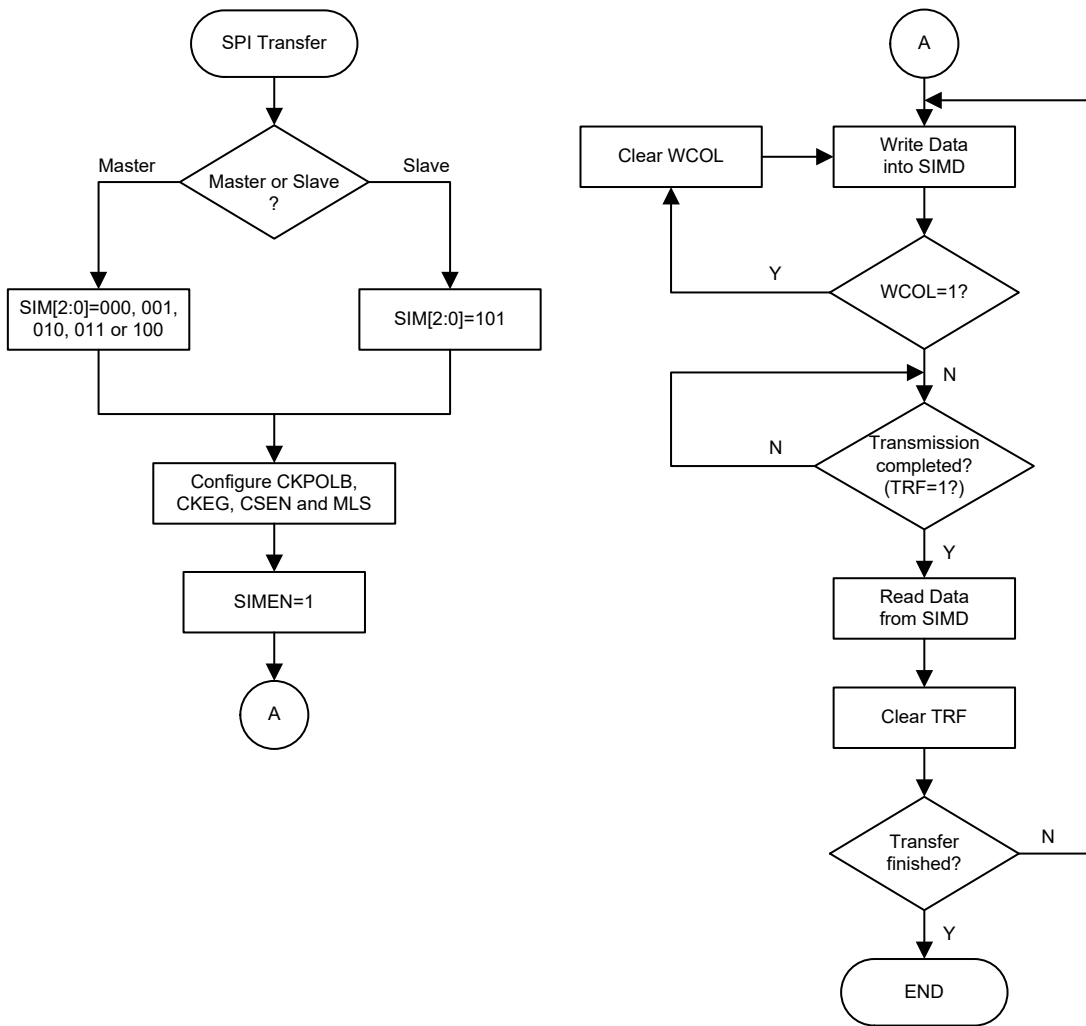


SPI Slave Mode Timing – CKEG=0



Note: For SPI slave mode, if SIMEN=1 and CSEN=0, SPI is always enabled and ignores the SCS level.

SPI Slave Mode Timing – CKEG=1



SPI Transfer Control Flow Chart

SPI Bus Enable/Disable

To enable the SPI bus, set CSEN=1 and $\overline{\text{SCS}}=0$, then wait for data to be written into the SIMD (TXRX buffer) register. For the Master Mode, after data has been written to the SIMD (TXRX buffer) register, then transmission or reception will start automatically. When all the data has been transferred, the TRF bit should be set. For the Slave Mode, when clock pulses are received on SCK, data in the TXRX buffer will be shifted out or data on SDI will be shifted in.

When the SPI bus is disabled, the SCK, SDI, SDO and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ can become I/O pins or other pin-shared functions using the corresponding pin-shared control bits.

SPI Operation Steps

All communication is carried out using the 4-line interface for either Master or Slave Mode.

The CSEN bit in the SIMC2 register controls the overall function of the SPI interface. Setting this bit high will enable the SPI interface by allowing the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ line to be active, which can then be used to control the SPI interface. If the CSEN bit is low, the SPI interface will be disabled and the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ line will be in a floating condition and can therefore not be used for control of the SPI interface. If the CSEN bit and the SIMEN bit in the SIMC0 are set high, this will place the SDI line in a floating condition and the SDO line high. If in Master Mode the SCK line will be either high or low depending upon the clock polarity selection bit CKPOLB in the SIMC2 register. If in Slave Mode the SCK line will be in a floating condition. If the SIMEN bit is low, then the bus will be disabled and the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$, SDI, SDO and SCK will all become I/O pins or the other functions using the corresponding pin-shared control bits. In the Master Mode the Master will always generate the clock signal. The clock and data transmission will be initiated after data has been written into the SIMD register. In the Slave Mode, the clock signal will be received from an external master device for both data transmission and reception. The following sequences show the order to be followed for data transfer in both Master and Slave Mode.

Master Mode

- Step 1
Select the SPI Master mode and clock source using the SIM2~SIM0 bits in the SIMC0 control register.
- Step 2
Setup the CSEN bit and setup the MLS bit to choose if the data is MSB or LSB first, this setting must be the same with the Slave devices.
- Step 3
Setup the SIMEN bit in the SIMC0 control register to enable the SPI interface.
- Step 4
For write operations: write the data to the SIMD register, which will actually place the data into the TXRX buffer. Then use the SCK and SDO lines to output the data. After this, go to step 5.
For read operations: the data transferred in on the SDI line will be stored in the TXRX buffer until all the data has been received at which point it will be latched into the SIMD register.
- Step 5
Check the WCOL bit if set high then a collision error has occurred so return to step 4. If equal to zero then go to the following step.
- Step 6
Check the TRF bit or wait for a SIM SPI serial bus interrupt.
- Step 7
Read data from the SIMD register.

- Step 8
Clear TRF.
- Step 9
Go to step 4.

Slave Mode

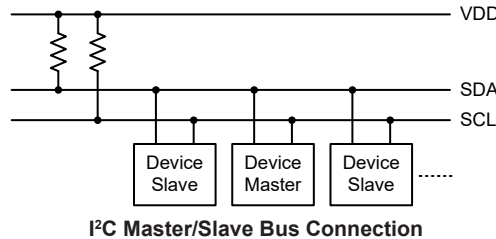
- Step 1
Select the SPI Slave mode using the SIM2~SIM0 bits in the SIMC0 control register
- Step 2
Setup the CSEN bit and setup the MLS bit to choose if the data is MSB or LSB first, this setting must be the same with the Master devices.
- Step 3
Setup the SIMEN bit in the SIMC0 control register to enable the SPI interface.
- Step 4
For write operations: write the data to the SIMD register, which will actually place the data into the TXRX buffer. Then wait for the master clock SCK and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ signal. After this, go to step 5.
For read operations: the data transferred in on the SDI line will be stored in the TXRX buffer until all the data has been received at which point it will be latched into the SIMD register.
- Step 5
Check the WCOL bit if set high then a collision error has occurred so return to step 4. If equal to zero then go to the following step.
- Step 6
Check the TRF bit or wait for a SIM SPI serial bus interrupt.
- Step 7
Read data from the SIMD register.
- Step 8
Clear TRF.
- Step 9
Go to step 4.

Error Detection

The WCOL bit in the SIMC2 register is provided to indicate errors during data transfer. The bit is set by the SPI serial Interface but must be cleared by the application program. This bit indicates that a data collision has occurred which happens if a write to the SIMD register takes place during a data transfer operation and will prevent the write operation from continuing.

I²C Interface

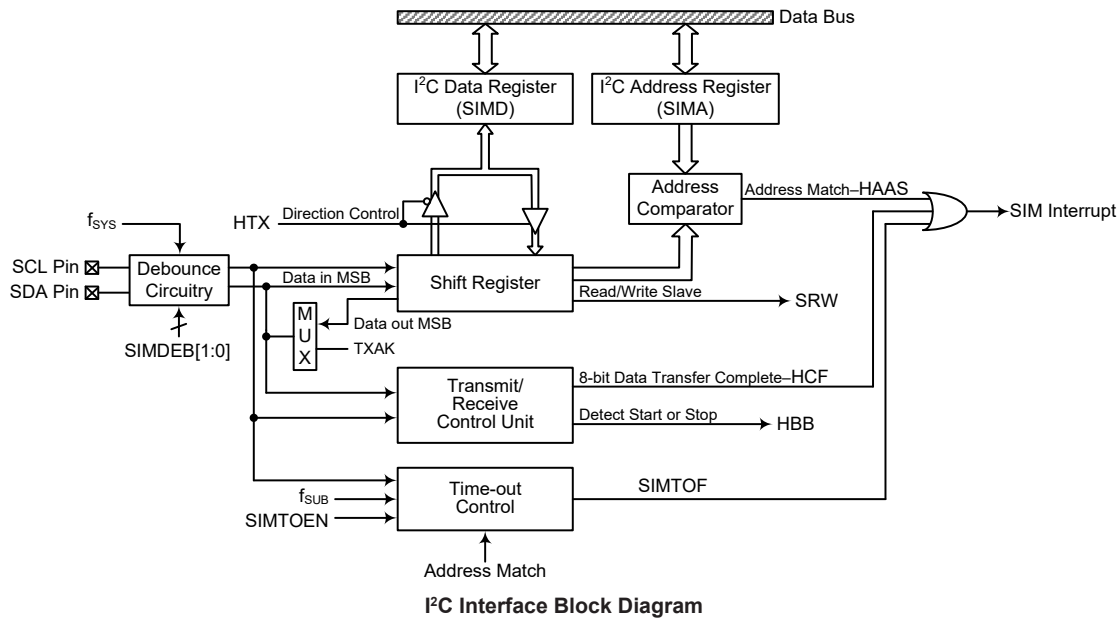
The I²C interface is used to communicate with external peripheral devices such as sensors, EEPROM memory etc. Originally developed by Philips, it is a two line low speed serial interface for synchronous serial data transfer. The advantage of only two lines for communication, relatively simple communication protocol and the ability to accommodate multiple devices on the same bus has made it an extremely popular interface type for many applications.

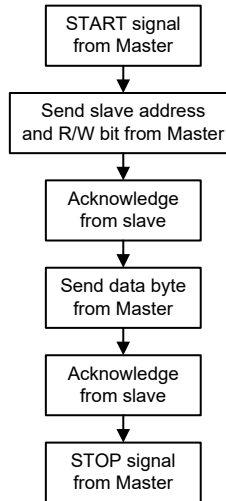


I²C Interface Operation

The I²C serial interface is a two line interface, a serial data line, SDA, and serial clock line, SCL. As many devices may be connected together on the same bus, their outputs are both open drain types. For this reason it is necessary that external pull-high resistors are connected to these outputs. Note that no chip select line exists, as each device on the I²C bus is identified by a unique address which will be transmitted and received on the I²C bus.

When two devices communicate with each other on the bidirectional I²C bus, one is known as the master device and one as the slave device. Both master and slave can transmit and receive data; however, it is the master device that has overall control of the bus. For the device, which only operates in slave mode, there are two methods of transferring data on the I²C bus, the slave transmit mode and the slave receive mode. The pull-high control function pin-shared with SCL/SDA pin is still applicable even if I²C device is activated and the related internal pull-high function could be controlled by its corresponding pull-high control register.





I²C Interface Operation

The SIMDEB1 and SIMDEB0 bits determine the debounce time of the I²C interface. This uses the system clock to in effect add a debounce time to the external clock to reduce the possibility of glitches on the clock line causing erroneous operation. The debounce time, if selected, can be chosen to be either 2 or 4 system clocks. To achieve the required I²C data transfer speed, there exists a relationship between the system clock, f_{SYS} , and the I²C debounce time. For either the I²C Standard or Fast mode operation, users must take care of the selected system clock frequency and the configured debounce time to match the criterion shown in the following table.

I ² C Debounce Time Selection	I ² C Standard Mode (100kHz)	I ² C Fast Mode (400kHz)
No Debounce	$f_{SYS} > 2\text{MHz}$	$f_{SYS} > 4\text{MHz}$
2 system clock debounce	$f_{SYS} > 4\text{MHz}$	$f_{SYS} > 8\text{MHz}$
4 system clock debounce	$f_{SYS} > 4\text{MHz}$	$f_{SYS} > 8\text{MHz}$

I²C Minimum f_{SYS} Frequency Requirement

I²C Registers

There are three control registers associated with the I²C bus, SIMC0, SIMC1 and SIMTOC, one address register SIMA and one data register, SIMD.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SIMC0	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
SIMC1	HCF	HAAS	HBB	HTX	TXAK	SRW	IAMWU	RXAK
SIMA	SIMA6	SIMA5	SIMA4	SIMA3	SIMA2	SIMA1	SIMA0	D0
SIMD	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
SIMTOC	SIMTOEN	SIMTOF	SIMTOS5	SIMTOS4	SIMTOS3	SIMTOS2	SIMTOS1	SIMTOS0

I²C Register List

I²C Data Register

The SIMD register is used to store the data being transmitted and received. The same register is used by both the SPI and I²C functions. Before the device writes data to the I²C bus, the actual data to be transmitted must be placed in the SIMD register. After the data is received from the I²C bus, the device can read it from the SIMD register. Any transmission or reception of data from the I²C bus must be made via the SIMD register.

• SIMD Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

 Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: SIM data register bit 7 ~ bit 0

I²C Address Register

The SIMA register is also used by the SPI interface but has the name SIMC2. The SIMA register is the location where the 7-bit slave address of the slave device is stored. Bits 7~1 of the SIMA register define the device slave address. Bit 0 is not implemented.

When a master device, which is connected to the I²C bus, sends out an address, which matches the slave address in the SIMA register, the slave device will be selected. Note that the SIMA register is the same register address as SIMC2 which is used by the SPI interface.

• SIMA Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIMA6	SIMA5	SIMA4	SIMA3	SIMA2	SIMA1	SIMA0	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

 Bit 7~1 **SIMA6~SIMA0**: I²C slave address
 SIMA6~SIMA0 is the I²C slave address bit 6~bit 0.

 Bit 0 **D0**: Reserved bit, can be read or written

I²C Control Registers

There are three control registers for the I²C interface, SIMC0, SIMC1 and SIMTOC. The register SIMC0 is used to control the enable/disable function and to set the data transmission clock frequency. The SIMC1 register contains the relevant flags which are used to indicate the I²C communication status. Another register, SIMTOC, is used to control the I²C time-out function and is described in the corresponding section.

• SIMC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	—	0	0	0	0

 Bit 7~5 **SIM2~SIM0**: SIM Operating Mode Control
 000: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/4$
 001: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/16$
 010: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/64$
 011: SPI master mode; SPI clock is f_{SUB}
 100: SPI master mode; SPI clock is CTM CCRP match frequency/2
 101: SPI slave mode
 110: I²C slave mode
 111: Non SIM function

These bits setup the overall operating mode of the SIM function. As well as selecting if the I²C or SPI function, they are used to control the SPI Master/Slave selection and the SPI Master clock frequency. The SPI clock is a function of the system clock but can also be chosen to be sourced from CTM and f_{SUB} . If the SPI Slave Mode is selected then the clock will be supplied by an external Master device.

- Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 3~2 **SIMDEB1~SIMDEB0**: I²C Debounce Time Selection
 - 00: No debounce
 - 01: 2 system clock debounce
 - 1x: 4 system clock debounce

These bits are used to select the I²C debounce time when the SIM is configured as the I²C interface function by setting the SIM2~SIM0 bits to “110”.
- Bit 1 **SIMEN**: SIM Enable Control
 - 0: Disable
 - 1: Enable

The bit is the overall on/off control for the SIM interface. When the SIMEN bit is cleared to zero to disable the SIM interface, the SDI, SDO, SCK and SCS, or SDA and SCL lines will lose their SPI or I²C function and the SIM operating current will be reduced to a minimum value. When the bit is high the SIM interface is enabled. The SIM configuration option must have first enabled the SIM interface for this bit to be effective. If the SIM is configured to operate as an SPI interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits, the contents of the SPI control registers will remain at the previous settings when the SIMEN bit changes from low to high and should therefore be first initialised by the application program. If the SIM is configured to operate as an I²C interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits and the SIMEN bit changes from low to high, the contents of the I²C control bits such as HTX and TXAK will remain at the previous settings and should therefore be first initialised by the application program while the relevant I²C flags such as HCF, HAAS, HBB, SRW and RXAK will be set to their default states.
- Bit 0 **SIMICF**: SIM SPI Incomplete Flag

The SIMICF bit is only used in the SPI mode and the detailed definition is described in the SPI section.

• **SIMC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	HCF	HAAS	HBB	HTX	TXAK	SRW	IAMWU	RXAK
R/W	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R
POR	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

- Bit 7 **HCF**: I²C Bus data transfer completion flag
 - 0: Data is being transferred
 - 1: Completion of an 8-bit data transfer

The HCF flag is the data transfer completion flag. This flag will be zero when data is being transferred. Upon completion of an 8-bit data transfer the flag will go high and an interrupt will be generated.
- Bit 6 **HAAS**: I²C Bus data transfer completion flag
 - 0: Not address match
 - 1: Address match

The HAAS flag is the address match flag. This flag is used to determine if the slave device address is the same as the master transmit address. If the addresses match then this bit will be high, if there is no match then the flag will be low.
- Bit 5 **HBB**: I²C Bus busy flag
 - 0: I²C Bus is not busy
 - 1: I²C Bus is busy

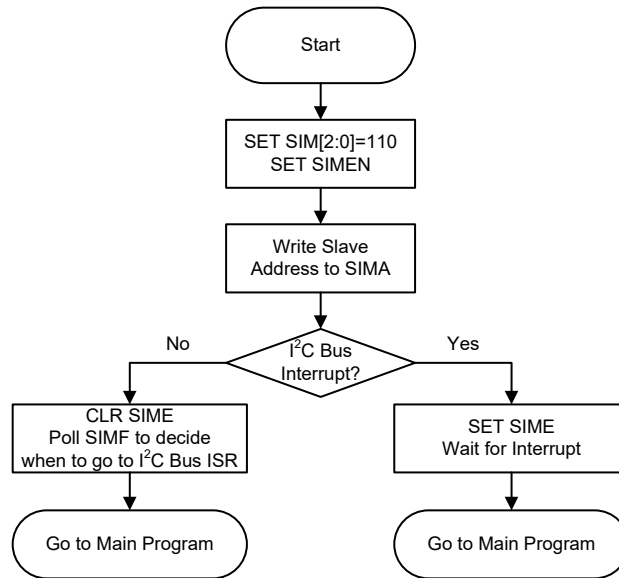
The HBB flag is the I²C busy flag. This flag will be “1” when the I²C bus is busy which will occur when a START signal is detected. The flag will be cleared to “0” when the bus is free which will occur when a STOP signal is detected.
- Bit 4 **HTX**: I²C slave device transmitter/receiver selection
 - 0: Slave device is the receiver
 - 1: Slave device is the transmitter

Bit 3	<p>TXAK: I²C bus transmit acknowledge flag</p> <p>0: Slave sends acknowledge flag 1: Slave does not send acknowledge flag</p> <p>The TXAK flag is the transmit acknowledge flag. After the slave device has received 8 bits of data, this flag will be transmitted to the bus on the 9th clock from the slave device. The slave device must always set the TXAK bit to “0” before further data is received.</p>
Bit 2	<p>SRW: I²C slave read/write flag</p> <p>0: Slave device should be in receive mode 1: Slave device should be in transmit mode</p> <p>The SRW flag is the I²C Slave Read/Write flag. This flag determines whether the master device wishes to transmit or receive data from the I²C bus. When the transmitted address and slave address is match, that is when the HAAS flag is set high, the slave device will check the SRW flag to determine whether it should be in transmit mode or receive mode. If the SRW flag is high, the master is requesting to read data from the bus, so the slave device should be in transmit mode. When the SRW flag is zero, the master will write data to the bus, therefore the slave device should be in receive mode to read this data.</p>
Bit 1	<p>IAMWU: I²C Address Match Wake-Up control</p> <p>0: Disable 1: Enable – must be cleared by the application program after wake-up</p> <p>This bit should be set to 1 to enable the I²C address match wake-up from the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. If the IAMWU bit has been set before entering either the SLEEP or IDLE mode to enable the I²C address match wake-up, then this bit must be cleared by the application program after wake-up to ensure correction device operation.</p>
Bit 0	<p>RXAK: I²C bus receive acknowledge flag</p> <p>0: Slave receives acknowledge flag 1: Slave does not receive acknowledge flag</p> <p>The RXAK flag is the receiver acknowledge flag. When the RXAK flag is “0”, it means that a acknowledge signal has been received at the 9th clock, after 8 bits of data have been transmitted. When the slave device is in the transmit mode, the slave device checks the RXAK flag to determine if the master receiver wishes to receive the next byte. The slave transmitter will therefore continue sending out data until the RXAK flag is “1”. When this occurs, the slave transmitter will release the SDA line to allow the master to send a STOP signal to release the I²C Bus.</p>

I²C Bus Communication

Communication on the I²C bus requires four separate steps, a START signal, a slave device address transmission, a data transmission and finally a STOP signal. When a START signal is placed on the I²C bus, all devices on the bus will receive this signal and be notified of the imminent arrival of data on the bus. The first seven bits of the data will be the slave address with the first bit being the MSB. If the address of the slave device matches that of the transmitted address, the HAAS bit in the SIMC1 register will be set and an SIM interrupt will be generated. After entering the interrupt service routine, the slave device must first check the condition of the HAAS and SIMTOF bits to determine whether the interrupt source originates from either an address match or the completion of an 8-bit data transfer or the I²C bus time-out occurrence. During a data transfer, note that after the 7-bit slave address has been transmitted, the following bit, which is the 8th bit, is the read/write bit whose value will be placed in the SRW bit. This bit will be checked by the slave device to determine whether to go into transmit or receive mode. Before any transfer of data to or from the I²C bus, the microcontroller must initialise the bus; the following are steps to achieve this:

- Step 1
Set the SIM2~SIM0 bits to “110” and SIMEN bit to “1” in the SIMC0 register to enable the I²C bus.
- Step 2
Write the slave address of the device to the I²C bus address register SIMA.
- Step 3
Set the SIME interrupt enable bit of the interrupt control register to enable the SIM interrupt.



I²C Bus Initialisation Flow Chart

I²C Bus Start Signal

The START signal can only be generated by the master device connected to the I²C bus and not by the slave device. This START signal will be detected by all devices connected to the I²C bus. When detected, this indicates that the I²C bus is busy and therefore the HBB bit will be set. A START condition occurs when a high to low transition on the SDA line takes place when the SCL line remains high.

I²C Slave Address

The transmission of a START signal by the master will be detected by all devices on the I²C bus. To determine which slave device the master wishes to communicate with, the address of the slave device will be sent out immediately following the START signal. All slave devices, after receiving this 7-bit address data, will compare it with their own 7-bit slave address. If the address sent out by the master matches the internal address of the microcontroller slave device, then an internal SIM I²C bus interrupt signal will be generated. The next bit following the address, which is the 8th bit, defines the read/write status and will be saved to the SRW bit of the SIMC1 register. The slave device will then transmit an acknowledge bit, which is a low level, as the 9th bit. The slave device will also set the status flag HAAS when the addresses match.

As an SIM I²C bus interrupt can come from three sources, when the program enters the interrupt subroutine, the HAAS and SIMTOF bits should be examined to see whether the interrupt source has come from either a matching slave address, the completion of a data byte transfer or the I²C bus time-out occurrence. When a slave address is matched, the device must be placed in either the transmit mode and then write data to the SIMD register, or in the receive mode where it must implement a dummy read from the SIMD register to release the SCL line.

I²C Bus Read/Write Signal

The SRW bit in the SIMC1 register defines whether the master device wishes to read data from the I²C bus or write data to the I²C bus. The slave device should examine this bit to determine if it is to be a transmitter or a receiver. If the SRW flag is “1” then this indicates that the master device wishes to read data from the I²C bus, therefore the slave device must be setup to send data to the I²C bus as a transmitter. If the SRW flag is “0” then this indicates that the master wishes to send data to the I²C bus, therefore the slave device must be setup to read data from the I²C bus as a receiver.

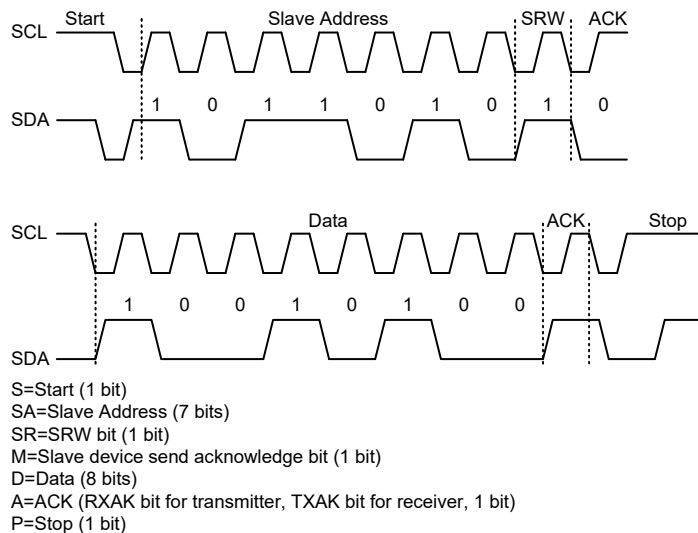
I²C Bus Slave Address Acknowledge Signal

After the master has transmitted a calling address, any slave device on the I²C bus, whose own internal address matches the calling address, must generate an acknowledge signal. The acknowledge signal will inform the master that a slave device has accepted its calling address. If no acknowledge signal is received by the master then a STOP signal must be transmitted by the master to end the communication. When the HAAS flag is high, the addresses have matched and the slave device must check the SRW flag to determine if it is to be a transmitter or a receiver. If the SRW flag is high, the slave device should be setup to be a transmitter so the HTX bit in the SIMC1 register should be set to “1”. If the SRW flag is low, then the microcontroller slave device should be setup as a receiver and the HTX bit in the SIMC1 register should be cleared to “0”.

I²C Bus Data and Acknowledge Signal

The transmitted data is 8-bit wide and is transmitted after the slave device has acknowledged receipt of its slave address. The order of serial bit transmission is the MSB first and the LSB last. After receipt of 8 bits of data, the receiver must transmit an acknowledge signal, level “0”, before it can receive the next data byte. If the slave transmitter does not receive an acknowledge bit signal from the master receiver, then the slave transmitter will release the SDA line to allow the master to send a STOP signal to release the I²C Bus. The corresponding data will be stored in the SIMD register. If setup as a transmitter, the slave device must first write the data to be transmitted into the SIMD register. If setup as a receiver, the slave device must read the transmitted data from the SIMD register.

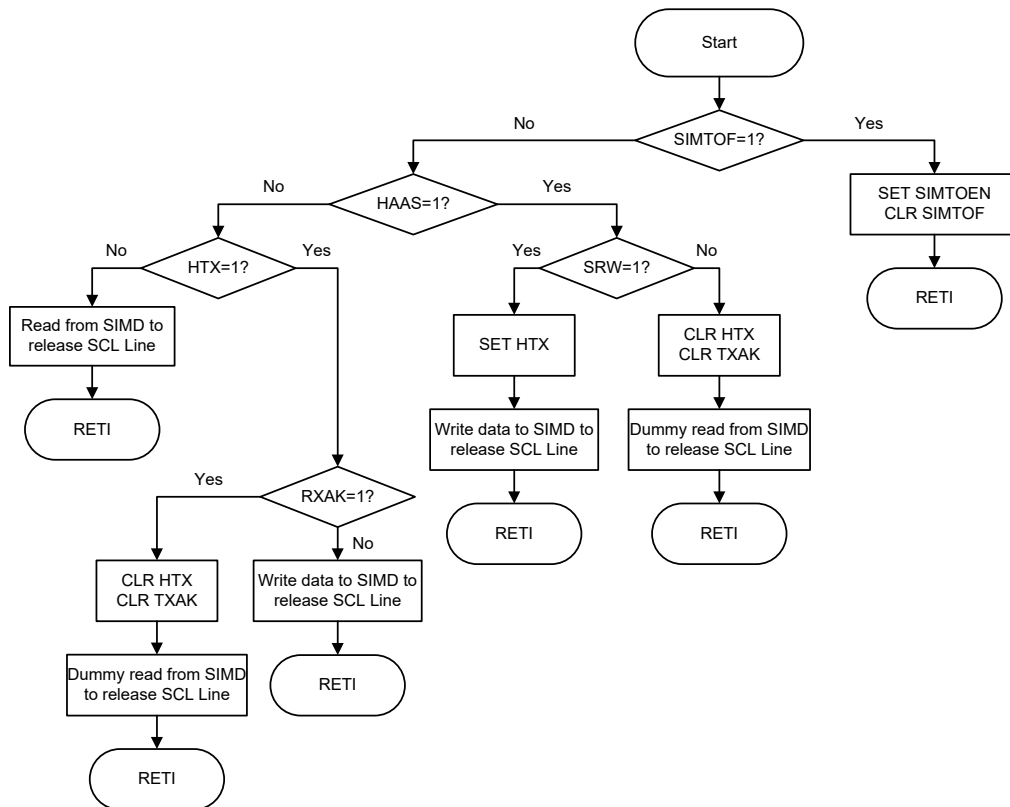
When the slave receiver receives the data byte, it must generate an acknowledge bit, known as TXAK, on the 9th clock. The slave device, which is setup as a transmitter will check the RXAK bit in the SIMC1 register to determine if it is to send another data byte, if not then it will release the SDA line and await the receipt of a STOP signal from the master.



S	SA	SR	M	D	A	D	A	S	SA	SR	M	D	A	D	A	P
---	----	----	---	---	---	---	---	-------	---	----	----	---	---	---	---	---	-------	---

Note: When a slave address is matched, the device must be placed in either the transmit mode and then write data to the SIMD register, or in the receive mode where it must implement a dummy read from the SIMD register to release the SCL line.

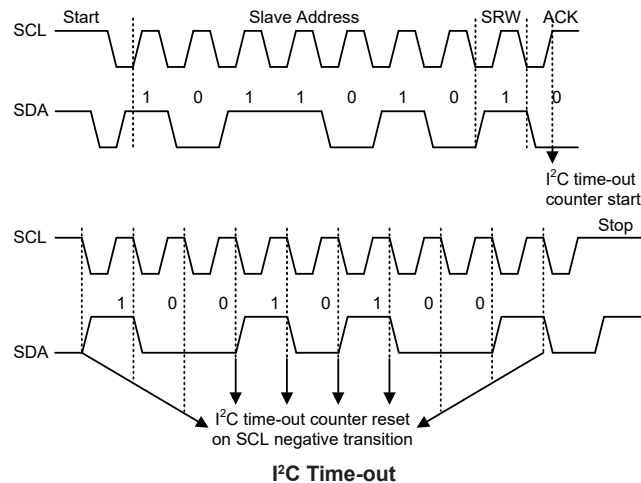
I²C Communication Timing Diagram



I²C Bus ISR Flow Chart

I²C Time-out Control

In order to reduce the I²C lockup problem due to reception of erroneous clock sources, a time-out function is provided. If the clock source connected to the I²C bus is not received for a while, then the I²C circuitry and registers will be reset after a certain time-out period. The time-out counter starts to count on an I²C bus “START” & “address match” condition, and is cleared by an SCL falling edge. Before the next SCL falling edge arrives, if the time elapsed is greater than the time-out period specified by the SIMTOC register, then a time-out condition will occur. The time-out function will stop when an I²C “STOP” condition occurs.



When an I²C time-out counter overflow occurs, the counter will stop and the SIMTOEN bit will be cleared to zero and the SIMTOF bit will be set high to indicate that a time-out condition has occurred. The time-out condition will also generate an interrupt which uses the SIM interrupt vector. When an I²C time-out occurs, the I²C internal circuitry will be reset and the registers will be reset into the following condition:

Registers	After I ² C Time-out
SIMD, SIMA, SIMC0	No change
SIMC1	Reset to POR condition

I²C Registers after Time-out

The SIMTOF flag can be cleared by the application program. There are 64 time-out period selections which can be selected using the SIMTOS5~SIMTOS0 bits in the SIMTOC register. The time-out duration is calculated by the formula: $((1\sim64)\times(32/f_{SUB}))$. This gives a time-out period which ranges from about 1ms to 64ms.

• **SIMTOC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIMTOEN	SIMTOF	SIMTOS5	SIMTOS4	SIMTOS3	SIMTOS2	SIMTOS1	SIMTOS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **SIMTOEN**: SIM I²C Time-out control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Bit 6 **SIMTOF**: SIM I²C Time-out flag
 0: No time-out occurred
 1: Time-out occurred

Bit 5~0 **SIMTOS5~SIMTOS0**: SIM I²C Time-out period selection
 I²C Time-out clock source is $f_{SUB}/32$.
 I²C Time-out period is equal to $(SIMTOS[5:0]+1)\times(32/f_{SUB})$.

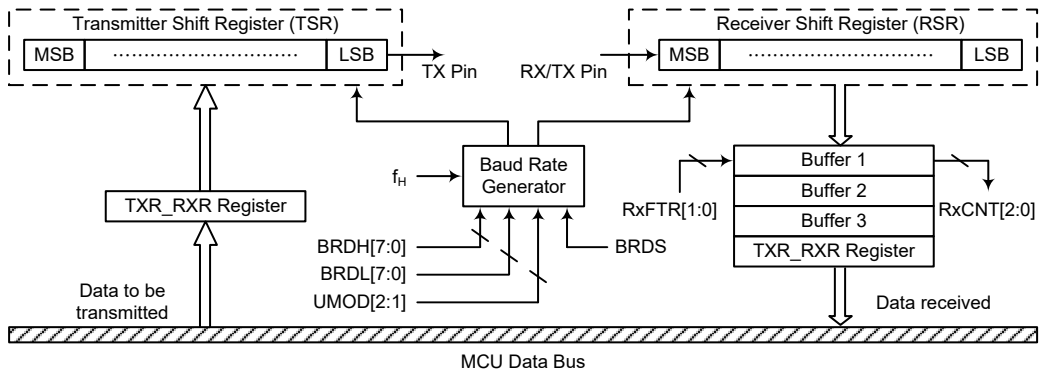
UART Interface

The device contains an integrated full-duplex or half-duplex asynchronous serial communications UART interface that enables communication with external devices that contain a serial interface. The UART function has many features and can transmit and receive data serially by transferring a frame of data with eight or nine data bits per transmission as well as being able to detect errors when the data is overwritten or incorrectly framed. The UART function possesses its own internal interrupt which can be used to indicate when a reception occurs or when a transmission terminates.

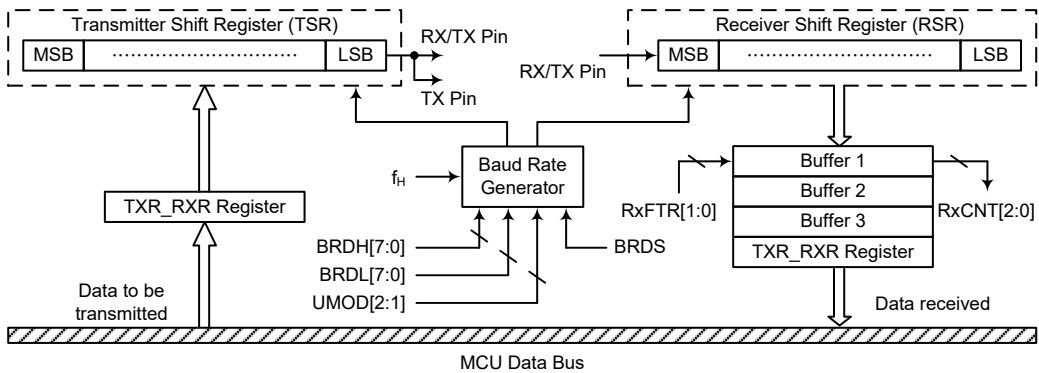
The integrated UART function contains the following features:

- Full-duplex or half-duplex (single wire mode), asynchronous communication
- 8 or 9 bits character length
- Even, odd, mark, space or no parity options
- One or two stop bits configurable for receiver
- Two stop bits for transmitter
- Baud rate generator with 16-bit prescaler
- Parity, framing, noise and overrun error detection
- Support for interrupt on address detect (last character bit=1)
- Separately enabled transmitter and receiver

- 4-byte Deep FIFO Receive Data Buffer
- 1-byte Deep FIFO Transmit Data Buffer
- RX/TX pin wake-up function
- Transmit and receive interrupts
- Interrupts can be triggered by the following conditions:
 - ♦ Transmitter Empty
 - ♦ Transmitter Idle
 - ♦ Receiver reaching FIFO trigger level
 - ♦ Receiver Overrun
 - ♦ Address Mode Detect



UART Data Transfer Block Diagram – SWM=0



UART Data Transfer Block Diagram – SWM=1

UART External Pins

To communicate with an external serial interface, the internal UART has two external pins known as TX and RX/TX, which are pin-shared with I/O or other pin functions. The TX and RX/TX pin function should first be selected by the corresponding pin-shared function selection register before the UART function is used. Along with the UARTEN bit, the TXEN and RXEN bits, if set, will configure these pins to transmitter output and receiver input conditions. At this time the internal pull-high resistor related to the transmitter output pin will be disabled, while the internal pull-high resistor related to the receiver input pin is controlled by the corresponding I/O pull-high function control bit. When the TX or RX/TX pin function is disabled by clearing the UARTEN, TXEN or RXEN bit, the TX or RX/TX pin will be set to a floating state. At this time whether the internal pull-high resistor is connected to the TX or RX/TX pin or not is determined by the corresponding I/O pull-high function control bit.

UART Single Wire Mode

The UART function also supports a Single Wire Mode communication which is selected using the SWM bit in the UCR3 register. When the SWM bit is set high, the UART function will be in the single wire mode. In the single wire mode, a single RX/TX pin can be used to transmit and receive data depending upon the corresponding control bits. When the RXEN bit is set high, the RX/TX pin is used as a receiver pin. When the RXEN bit is cleared to zero and the TXEN bit is set high, the RX/TX pin will act as a transmitter pin.

It is recommended not to set both the RXEN and TXEN bits high in the single wire mode. If both the RXEN and TXEN bits are set high, the RXEN bit will have the priority and the UART will act as a receiver.

It is important to note that the functional description in this UART chapter, which is described from the full-duplex communication standpoint, also applies to the half-duplex (single wire mode) communication except the pin usage. In the single wire mode, the TX pin mentioned in this chapter should be replaced by the RX/TX pin to understand the whole UART single wire mode function.

In the single wire mode, the data can also be transmitted on the TX pin in a transmission operation with proper software configurations. Therefore, the data will be output on the RX/TX and TX pins.

UART Data Transfer Scheme

The UART Data Transfer Block Diagram shows the overall data transfer structure arrangement for the UART. The actual data to be transmitted from the MCU is first transferred to the TXR_RXR register by the application program. The data will then be transferred to the Transmit Shift Register from where it will be shifted out, LSB first, onto the TX pin at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. Only the TXR_RXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Transmit Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

Data to be received by the UART is accepted on the external RX/TX pin, from where it is shifted in, LSB first, to the Receiver Shift Register at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. When the shift register is full, the data will then be transferred from the shift register to the internal TXR_RXR register, where it is buffered and can be manipulated by the application program. Only the TXR_RXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Receiver Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

It should be noted that the actual register for data transmission and reception only exists as a single shared register, TXR_RXR, in the Data Memory.

UART Status and Control Registers

There are nine control registers associated with the UART function. The SWM bit in the UCR3 register is used to enable/disable the UART Single Wire Mode. The USR, UCR1, UCR2, UFCR and RxCNT registers control the overall function of the UART, while the BRDH and BRDL registers control the Baud rate. The actual data to be transmitted and received on the serial interface is managed through the TXR_RXR data register.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
USR	PERR	NF	FERR	OERR	RIDLE	RXIF	TIDLE	TXIF
UCR1	UARTEN	BNO	PREN	PRT1	PRT0	TXBRK	RX8	TX8
UCR2	TXEN	RXEN	STOPS	ADDEN	WAKE	RIE	TIIE	TEIE
UCR3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWM
TXR_RXR	TXRX7	TXRX6	TXRX5	TXRX4	TXRX3	TXRX2	TXRX1	TXRX0
BRDH	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
BRDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
UFCR	—	—	UMOD2	UMOD1	UMOD0	BRDS	RxFTR1	RxFTR0
RxCNT	—	—	—	—	—	D2	D1	D0

UART Register List

• **USR Register**

The USR register is the status register for the UART, which can be read by the program to determine the present status of the UART. All flags within the USR register are read only. Further explanation on each of the flags is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PERR	NF	FERR	OERR	RIDLE	RXIF	TIDLE	TXIF
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1

Bit 7 PERR: Parity error flag
 0: No parity error is detected
 1: Parity error is detected
 The PERR flag is the parity error flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates a parity error has not been detected. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is applicable only if the parity is enabled and the parity type (odd, even, mark or space) is selected. The flag can also be cleared by a software sequence which involves a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 6 NF: Noise flag
 0: No noise is detected
 1: Noise is detected
 The NF flag is the noise flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates no noise condition. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the UART has detected noise on the receiver input. The NF flag is set during the same cycle as the RXIF flag but will not be set in the case of an overrun. The NF flag can be cleared by a software sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 5 FERR: Framing error flag
 0: No framing error is detected
 1: Framing error is detected
 The FERR flag is the framing error flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that there is no framing error. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that a framing error has been detected for the current character. The flag can also be cleared by a software sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 4 OERR: Overrun error flag
 0: No overrun error is detected
 1: Overrun error is detected
 The OERR flag is the overrun error flag which indicates when the receiver buffer has overflowed. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that there is no overrun error. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that an overrun error occurs which will inhibit further transfers to the TXR_RXR receive data register. The flag is cleared by a software sequence, which is a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

- Bit 3 RIDLE:** Receiver status
 0: Data reception is in progress (Data being received)
 1: No data reception is in progress (Receiver is idle)
 The RIDLE flag is the receiver status flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that the receiver is between the initial detection of the start bit and the completion of the stop bit. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the receiver is idle. Between the completion of the stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE bit is “1” indicating that the UART receiver is idle and the RX/TX pin stays in logic high condition.
- Bit 2 RXIF:** Receive TXR_RXR data register status
 0: TXR_RXR data register is empty
 1: TXR_RXR data register has available data and Receiver FIFO trigger level is reached
 The RXIF flag is the receive data register status flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that the TXR_RXR read data register is empty. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the TXR_RXR read data register contains new data and Receiver FIFO trigger level is reached. When the contents of the shift register are transferred to the TXR_RXR register and Receiver FIFO trigger level is reached, an interrupt is generated if RIE=1 in the UCR2 register. If one or more errors are detected in the received word, the appropriate receive-related flags NF, FERR, and/or PERR are set within the same clock cycle. The RXIF flag is cleared when the USR register is read with RXIF set, followed by a read from the TXR_RXR register, and if the TXR_RXR register has no data available.
- Bit 1 TIDLE:** Transmission idle
 0: Data transmission is in progress (Data being transmitted)
 1: No data transmission is in progress (Transmitter is idle)
 The TIDLE flag is known as the transmission complete flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that a transmission is in progress. This flag will be set high when the TXIF flag is “1” and when there is no transmit data or break character being transmitted. When TIDLE is equal to “1”, the TX pin becomes idle with the pin state in logic high condition. The TIDLE flag is cleared by reading the USR register with TIDLE set and then writing to the TXR_RXR register. The flag is not generated when a data character or a break is queued and ready to be sent.
- Bit 0 TXIF:** Transmit TXR_RXR data register status
 0: Character is not transferred to the transmit shift register
 1: Character has transferred to the transmit shift register (TXR_RXR data register is empty)
 The TXIF flag is the transmit data register empty flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that the character is not transferred to the transmitter shift register. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the transmitter shift register has received a character from the TXR_RXR data register. The TXIF flag is cleared by reading the UART status register (USR) with TXIF set and then writing to the TXR_RXR data register. Note that when the TXEN bit is set, the TXIF flag will also be set since the transmit data register is not yet full.

• **UCR1 Register**

The UCR1 register together with the UCR2 and UCR3 register are the three UART control registers that are used to set the various options for the UART function, such as overall on/off control, parity control, data transfer bit length, single wire mode communication etc. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	UARTEN	BNO	PREN	PRT1	PRT0	TXBRK	RX8	TX8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

“x”: unknown

- Bit 7 UARTEN:** UART function enable control
 0: Disable UART. TX and RX/TX pins are in a floating state
 1: Enable UART. TX and RX/TX pins function as UART pins

The UARTEN bit is the UART enable bit. When this bit is equal to “0”, the UART will be disabled and the RX/TX pin as well as the TX pin will be set in a floating state. When the bit is equal to “1”, the UART will be enabled and the TX and RX/TX pins will function as defined by the SWM mode selection bit together with the TXEN and RXEN enable control bits.

When the UART is disabled, it will empty the buffer so any character remaining in the buffer will be discarded. In addition, the value of the baud rate counter will be reset. If the UART is disabled, all error and status flags will be reset. Also the TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF bits as well as the RxCNT register will be cleared, while the TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE bits will be set. Other control bits in UCR1, UCR2, UCR3, UFCR, BRDH and BRDL registers will remain unaffected. If the UART is active and the UARTEN bit is cleared, all pending transmissions and receptions will be terminated and the module will be reset as defined above. When the UART is re-enabled, it will restart in the same configuration.

- Bit 6 **BNO**: Number of data transfer bits selection
 0: 8-bit data transfer
 1: 9-bit data transfer

This bit is used to select the data length format, which can have a choice of either 8-bit or 9-bit format. When this bit is equal to “1”, a 9-bit data length format will be selected. If the bit is equal to “0”, then an 8-bit data length format will be selected. If 9-bit data length format is selected, then bits RX8 and TX8 will be used to store the 9th bit of the received and transmitted data respectively.

Note that the 9th bit of data if BNO=1, or the 8th bit of data if BNO=0, which is used as the parity bit, does not transfer to RX8 or TXRX7 respectively when the parity function is enabled.

- Bit 5 **PREN**: Parity function enable control
 0: Parity function is disabled
 1: Parity function is enabled

This is the parity enable bit. When this bit is equal to “1”, the parity function will be enabled. If the bit is equal to “0”, then the parity function will be disabled. Replace the most significant bit position with a parity bit.

- Bit 4~3 **PRT1~PRT0**: Parity type selection bits
 00: Even parity for parity generator
 01: Odd parity for parity generator
 10: Mark parity for parity generator
 11: Space parity for parity generator

These bits are the parity type selection bits. When these bits are equal to 00b, even parity type will be selected. If these bits are equal to 01b, then odd parity type will be selected. If these bits are equal to 10b, then a 1 (Mark) in the parity bit location will be selected. If these bits are equal to 11b, then a 0 (Space) in the parity bit location will be selected.

- Bit 2 **TXBRK**: Transmit break character
 0: No break character is transmitted
 1: Break characters transmit

The TXBRK bit is the Transmit Break Character bit. When this bit is “0”, there are no break characters and the TX pin operates normally. When the bit is “1”, there are transmit break characters and the transmitter will send logic zeros. When this bit is equal to “1”, after the buffered data has been transmitted, the transmitter output is held low for a minimum of a 13-bit length and until the TXBRK bit is reset.

- Bit 1 **RX8**: Receive data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (read only)

This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the received data known as RX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.

- Bit 0 **TX8**: Transmit data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (write only)

This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the transmitted data known as TX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.

• UCR2 Register

The UCR2 register is the second of the two UART control registers and serves several purposes. One of its main functions is to control the basic enable/disable operation of the UART Transmitter and Receiver as well as enabling the various UART interrupt sources. The register also serves to control the receiver STOP bit number selection, receiver wake-up enable and the address detect enable. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXEN	RXEN	STOPS	ADDEN	WAKE	RIE	TIE	TEIE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TXEN**: UART Transmitter enabled control

0: UART transmitter is disabled

1: UART transmitter is enabled

The bit named TXEN is the Transmitter Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to “0”, the transmitter will be disabled with any pending data transmissions being aborted. In addition the buffers will be reset. In this situation the TX pin will be set in a floating state.

If the TXEN bit is equal to “1” and the UARTEN bit is also equal to “1”, the transmitter will be enabled and the TX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the TXEN bit during a transmission will cause the data transmission to be aborted and will reset the transmitter. If this situation occurs, the TX pin will be set in a floating state.

Bit 6 **RXEN**: UART Receiver enabled control

0: UART receiver is disabled

1: UART receiver is enabled

The bit named RXEN is the Receiver Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to “0”, the receiver will be disabled with any pending data receptions being aborted. In addition the receive buffers will be reset. In this situation the RX/TX pin will be set in a floating state. If the RXEN bit is equal to “1” and the UARTEN bit is also equal to “1”, the receiver will be enabled and the RX/TX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the RXEN bit during a reception will cause the data reception to be aborted and will reset the receiver. If this situation occurs, the RX/TX pin will be set in a floating state.

Bit 5 **STOPS**: Number of Stop bits selection for receiver

0: One stop bit format is used

1: Two stop bits format is used

This bit determines if one or two stop bits are to be used for receiver. When this bit is equal to “1”, two stop bits are used. If this bit is equal to “0”, then only one stop bit is used. Two stop bits are used for transmitter.

Bit 4 **ADDEN**: Address detect function enable control

0: Address detect function is disabled

1: Address detect function is enabled

The bit named ADDEN is the address detect function enable control bit. When this bit is equal to “1”, the address detect function is enabled. When it occurs, if the 8th bit, which corresponds to TXRX7 if BNO=0 or the 9th bit, which corresponds to RX8 if BNO=1, has a value of “1”, then the received word will be identified as an address, rather than data. If the corresponding interrupt is enabled, an interrupt request will be generated each time the received word has the address bit set, which is the 8th or 9th bit depending on the value of BNO. If the address bit known as the 8th or 9th bit of the received word is “0” with the address detect function being enabled, an interrupt will not be generated and the received data will be discarded.

- Bit 3 WAKE:** RX/TX pin wake-up UART function enable control
 0: RX/TX pin wake-up UART function is disabled
 1: RX/TX pin wake-up UART function is enabled
 This bit is used to control the wake-up UART function when a falling edge on the RX/TX pin occurs. Note that this bit is only available when the UART clock (f_{H}) is switched off. There will be no RX/TX pin wake-up UART function if the UART clock (f_{H}) exists. If the WAKE bit is set to 1 as the UART clock (f_{H}) is switched off, a UART wake-up request will be initiated when a falling edge on the RX/TX pin occurs. When this request happens and the corresponding interrupt is enabled, an RX/TX pin wake-up UART interrupt will be generated to inform the MCU to wake up the UART function by switching on the UART clock (f_{H}) via the application program. Otherwise, the UART function cannot resume even if there is a falling edge on the RX/TX pin when the WAKE bit is cleared to 0.
- Bit 2 RIE:** Receiver interrupt enable control
 0: Receiver related interrupt is disabled
 1: Receiver related interrupt is enabled
 This bit enables or disables the receiver interrupt. If this bit is equal to “1” and when the receiver overrun flag OERR or receive data available flag RXIF is set, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to “0”, the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the OERR or RXIF flags.
- Bit 1 TIIE:** Transmitter Idle interrupt enable control
 0: Transmitter idle interrupt is disabled
 1: Transmitter idle interrupt is enabled
 This bit enables or disables the transmitter idle interrupt. If this bit is equal to “1” and when the transmitter idle flag TIDLE is set, due to a transmitter idle condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to “0”, the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TIDLE flag.
- Bit 0 TEIE:** Transmitter Empty interrupt enable control
 0: Transmitter empty interrupt is disabled
 1: Transmitter empty interrupt is enabled
 This bit enables or disables the transmitter empty interrupt. If this bit is equal to “1” and when the transmitter empty flag TXIF is set, due to a transmitter empty condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to “0”, the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TXIF flag.

• **UCR3 Register**

The UCR3 register is used to enable the UART Single Wire Mode communication. As the name suggests in the single wire mode the UART communication can be implemented in one single line, RX/TX, together with the control of the RXEN and TXEN bits in the UCR2 register.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWM
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0

- Bit 7~1** Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 0 SWM:** Single Wire Mode enable control
 0: Disable, the RX/TX pin is used as UART receiver function only
 1: Enable, the RX/TX pin can be used as UART receiver or transmitter function controlled by the RXEN and TXEN bits
 Note that when the Single Wire Mode is enabled, if both the RXEN and TXEN bits are high, the RX/TX pin will just be used as UART receiver input.

• TXR_RXR Register

The TXR_RXR register is the data register which is used to store the data to be transmitted on the TX pin or being received from the RX/TX pin.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXRX7	TXRX6	TXRX5	TXRX4	TXRX3	TXRX2	TXRX1	TXRX0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~0 **TXRX7~TXRX0**: UART Transmit/Receive Data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• BRDH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Baud rate divider high byte

The baud rate divider BRD (BRDH/BRDL) defines the UART clock divider ratio.

$$\text{Baud Rate} = f_{ih}/(\text{BRD} + \text{UMOD}/8)$$

BRD=16~65535 or 8~65535 depending on BRDS

Note: 1. The BRD value should not be set to less than 16 when BRDS=0 or less than 8 when BRDS=1, otherwise errors may occur.

2. The BRDL must be written first and then BRDH, otherwise errors may occur.

3. The BRDH register should not be modified during data transmission process.

BRDL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Baud rate divider low byte

The baud rate divider BRD (BRDH/BRDL) defines the UART clock divider ratio.

$$\text{Baud Rate} = f_{ih}/(\text{BRD} + \text{UMOD}/8)$$

BRD=16~65535 or 8~65535 depending on BRDS

Note: 1. The BRD value should not be set to less than 16 when BRDS=0 or less than 8 when BRDS=1, otherwise errors may occur.

2. The BRDL must be written first and then BRDH, otherwise errors may occur.

3. The BRDL register should not be modified during data transmission process.

• UFCR Register

The UFCR register is the FIFO control register which is used for UART modulation control, BRD range selection and trigger level selection for RXIF and interrupt.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	UMOD2	UMOD1	UMOD0	BRDS	RxFTR1	RxFTR0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 5~3 **UMOD2~UMOD0**: UART Modulation Control bits

The modulation control bits are used to correct the baud rate of the received or transmitted UART signal. These bits determine if the extra UART clock cycle should

be added in a UART bit time. The UMOD2~UMOD0 will be added to internal accumulator for every UART bit time. Until a carry to bit 3, the corresponding UART bit time increases a UART clock cycle.

- Bit 2 **BRDS**: BRD range selection
 0: BRD range is from 16 to 65535
 1: BRD range is from 8 to 65535

The BRDS is used to control the sampling point in a UART bit time. If the BRDS bit is cleared to zero, the sampling point will be $BRD/2$, $BRD/2+1 \times f_{ih}$, and $BRD/2+2 \times f_{ih}$ in a UART bit time. If the BRDS bit is set high, the sampling point will be $BRD/2-1 \times f_{ih}$, $BRD/2$, and $BRD/2+2 \times f_{ih}$ in a UART bit time.

Note that the BRDS bit should not be modified during data transmission process.

- Bit 1~0 **RxFTR1~RxFTR0**: Receiver FIFO trigger level (bytes)
 00: 4 bytes in Receiver FIFO
 01: 1 or more bytes in Receiver FIFO
 10: 2 or more bytes in Receiver FIFO
 11: 3 or more bytes in Receiver FIFO

For the receiver these bits define the number of received data bytes in the Receiver FIFO that will trigger the RXIF bit being set high, an interrupt will also be generated if the RIE bit is enabled. To prevent OERR from being set high, the receiver FIFO trigger level can be set to 2 bytes, avoiding an overrun state that cannot be processed by the program in time when more than 4 data bytes are received. After the reset the Receiver FIFO is empty.

• **RxCNT Register**

The RxCNT register is the counter used to indicate the number of received data bytes in the Receiver FIFO which have not been read by the MCU. This register is read only.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	D2	D1	D0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	R	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

- Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”
 Bit 2~0 **D2~D0**: Receiver FIFO counter

The RxCNT register is the counter used to indicate the number of received data bytes in the Receiver FIFO which is not read by the MCU. When Receiver FIFO receives one byte data, the RxCNT will increase by one; when the MCU reads one byte data from the Receiver FIFO, the RxCNT will decrease by one. If there are 4 bytes of data in the Receiver FIFO, the 5th data will be saved in the shift register. If there is 6th data, the 6th data will be saved in the shift register. But the RxCNT remains the value of 4. The RxCNT will be cleared when reset occurs or UARTEN=1. This register is read only.

Baud Rate Generator

To setup the speed of the serial data communication, the UART function contains its own dedicated baud rate generator. The baud rate is controlled by its own internal free running 16-bit timer, the period of which is determined by two factors. The first of these is the value placed in the BRDH/BRDL register and the second is the UART modulation control bits UMOD2~UMOD0. To prevent accumulated error of the receiver baud rate frequency, it is recommended to use two stop bits for resynchronization after each byte is received. If a baud rate BR is required with UART clock f_{ih} .

$$f_{ih}/BR = \text{Integer Part} + \text{Fractional Part}$$

The integer part is loaded into BRD (BRDH/BRDL). The fractional part is multiplied by 8 and rounded, then loaded into the UMOD bit field below:

$$BRD = \text{TRUNC}(f_H/BR)$$

$$UMOD = \text{ROUND}[\text{MOD}(f_H/BR) \times 8]$$

Therefore, the actual baud rate is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Baud rate} = f_H/[BRD+(UMOD/8)]$$

Calculating the Baud Rate and Error Values

For a clock frequency of 4MHz, determine the BRDH/BRDL register value, the actual baud rate and the error value for a desired baud rate of 230400.

From the above formula, the $BRD = \text{TRUNC}(f_H/BR) = \text{TRUNC}(17.36111) = 17$

The $UMOD = \text{ROUND}[\text{MOD}(f_H/BR) \times 8] = \text{ROUND}(0.36111 \times 8) = \text{ROUND}(2.88888) = 3$

The actual Baud Rate = $f_H/[BRD+(UMOD/8)] = 230215.83$

Therefore the error is equal to $(230215.83-230400)/230400 = -0.08\%$

Modulation Control Example

To get the best-fitting bit sequence for UART modulation control bits UMOD2~UMOD0, the following algorithm can be used: Firstly, the fractional part of the theoretical division factor is multiplied by 8. Then the product will be rounded and UMOD2~UMOD0 bits will be filled with the rounded value. The UMOD2~UMOD0 will be added to internal accumulator for every UART bit time. Until a carry to bit 3, the corresponding UART bit time increases a UART clock cycle. The following is an example using the fraction 0.36111 previously calculated: $UMOD[2:0]=\text{ROUND}(0.36111 \times 8)=011b$.

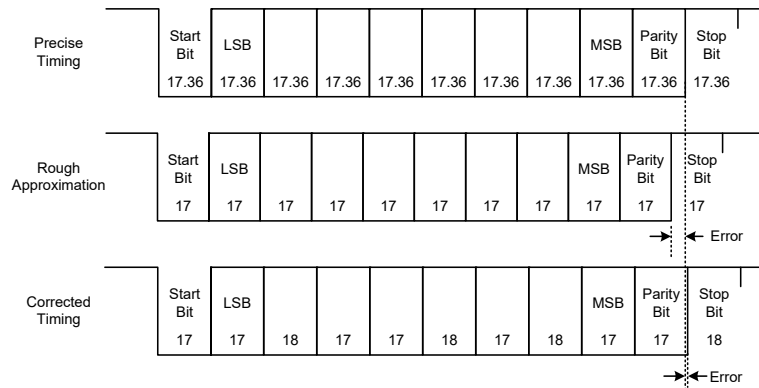
Fraction Addition	Carry to Bit 3	UART Bit Time Sequence	Extra UART Clock Cycle
0000b+0011b=0011b	No	Start bit	No
0011b+0011b=0110b	No	D0	No
0110b+0011b=1001b	Yes	D1	Yes
1001b+0011b=1100b	No	D2	No
1100b+0011b=1111b	No	D3	No
1111b+0011b=0010b	Yes	D4	Yes
0010b+0011b=0101b	No	D5	No
0101b+0011b=1000b	Yes	D6	Yes
1000b+0011b=1011b	No	D7	No
1011b+0011b=1110b	No	Parity bit	No
1110b+0011b=0001b	Yes	Stop bit	Yes

Baud Rate Correction Example

The following figure presents an example using a baud rate of 230400 generated with UART clock f_H . The data format for the following figure is: eight data bits, parity enabled, no address bit, two stop bits.

The following figure shows three different frames:

- The upper frame is the correct one, with a bit-length of $17.36 f_H$ cycles ($4000000/230400=17.36$).
- The middle frame uses a rough estimate, with $17 f_H$ cycles for the bit length.
- The lower frame shows a corrected frame using the best fit for the UART modulation control bits UMOD2~UMOD0.



UART Setup and Control

For data transfer, the UART function utilizes a non-return-to-zero, more commonly known as NRZ, format. This is composed of one start bit, eight or nine data bits, and one or two stop bits. Parity is supported by the UART hardware, and can be setup to be even, odd, mark, space or no parity. For the most common data format, 8 data bits along with no parity and one stop bit, denoted as 8, N, 1, is used as the default setting, which is the setting at power-on. The number of data bits along with the parity are setup by programming the BNO, PRT1~PRT0 and PREN bits. The transmitter always uses two stop bits while the receiver uses one or two stop bits which is determined by the STOPS bit. The baud rate used to transmit and receive data is setup using the internal 16-bit baud rate generator, while the data is transmitted and received LSB first. Although the UART transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, they both use the same data format and baud rate. In all cases stop bits will be used for data transmission.

Enabling/Disabling the UART Interface

The basic on/off function of the internal UART function is controlled using the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register. If the UARTEN, TXEN and RXEN bits are set, then these two UART pins will act as normal TX output pin and RX/TX input pin respectively. If no data is being transmitted on the TX pin, then it will default to a logic high value.

Clearing the UARTEN bit will disable the TX and RX/TX pins and allow these two pins to be used as normal I/O or other pin-shared functional pins by configuring the corresponding pin-shared control bits. When the UART function is disabled the buffer will be reset to an empty condition, at the same time discarding any remaining residual data. Disabling the UART will also reset the error and status flags with bits TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF as well as register RxCNT being cleared while bits TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE will be set. The remaining control bits in the UCR1, UCR2, UCR3, UFCR, BRDH and BRDL registers will remain unaffected. If the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register is cleared while the UART is active, then all pending transmissions and receptions will be immediately suspended and the UART will be reset to a condition as defined above. If the UART is then subsequently re-enabled, it will restart again in the same configuration.

Data, Parity and Stop Bit Selection

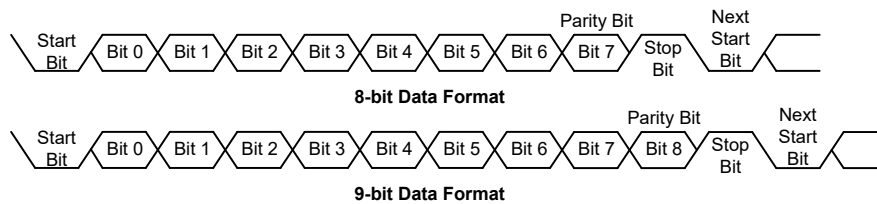
The format of the data to be transferred is composed of various factors such as data bit length, parity on/off, parity type, address bits and the number of stop bits. These factors are determined by the setup of various bits within the UCR1 and UCR2 registers. The BNO bit controls the number of data bits which can be set to either 8 or 9, the PRT1~PRT0 bits control the choice of odd, even, mark or space parity, the PREN bit controls the parity on/off function and the STOPS bit decides whether one or two stop bits are to be used for the receiver, while the transmitter always uses two stop bits. The following table shows various formats for data transmission. The address bit, which is the MSB

of the data byte, identifies the frame as an address character or data if the address detect function is enabled. The number of stop bits, which can be either one or two, is independent of the data length and is only configurable for the receiver. The transmitter uses two stop bits.

Start Bit	Data Bits	Address Bit	Parity Bit	Stop Bit
Example of 8-bit Data Formats				
1	8	0	0	1 or 2
1	7	0	1	1 or 2
1	7	1	0	1 or 2
Example of 9-bit Data Formats				
1	9	0	0	1 or 2
1	8	0	1	1 or 2
1	8	1	0	1 or 2

Transmitter Receiver Data Format

The following diagram shows the transmit and receive waveforms for both 8-bit and 9-bit data formats.



UART Transmitter

Data word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits can be selected by programming the BNO bit in the UCR1 register. When BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits. In this case the 9th bit, which is the MSB, needs to be stored in the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. At the transmitter core lies the Transmitter Shift Register, more commonly known as the TSR, whose data is obtained from the transmit data register, which is known as the TXR_RXR register. The data to be transmitted is loaded into this TXR_RXR register by the application program. The TSR register is not written to with new data until the stop bit from the previous transmission has been sent out. As soon as this stop bit has been transmitted, the TSR can then be loaded with new data from the TXR_RXR register, if it is available. It should be noted that the TSR register, unlike many other registers, is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations. An actual transmission of data will normally be enabled when the TXEN bit is set, but the data will not be transmitted until the TXR_RXR register has been loaded with data and the baud rate generator has defined a shift clock source. However, the transmission can also be initiated by first loading data into the TXR_RXR register, after which the TXEN bit can be set. When a transmission of data begins, the TSR is normally empty, in which case a transfer to the TXR_RXR register will result in an immediate transfer to the TSR. If during a transmission the TXEN bit is cleared, the transmission will immediately cease and the transmitter will be reset. The TX output pin can then be configured as the I/O or other pin-shared functions by configuring the corresponding pin-shared control bits.

Transmitting Data

When the UART is transmitting data, the data is shifted on the TX pin from the shift register, with the least significant bit first. In the transmit mode, the TXR_RXR register forms a buffer between the internal bus and the transmitter shift register. It should be noted that if 9-bit data format has been selected, then the MSB will be taken from the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of the BNO, PRT1~PRT0 and PREN bits to define the required word length and parity type. Two stop bits are used for the transmitter.
- Setup the BRDH and BRDL registers and the UMOD2~UMOD0 bits to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the TXEN bit to ensure that the TX pin is used as a UART transmitter pin.
- Access the USR register and write the data that is to be transmitted into the TXR_RXR register. Note that this step will clear the TXIF bit.

This sequence of events can now be repeated to send additional data.

It should be noted that when TXIF=0, data will be inhibited from being written to the TXR_RXR register. Clearing the TXIF flag is always achieved using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register write execution

The read-only TXIF flag is set by the UART hardware and if set indicates that the TXR_RXR register is empty and that other data can now be written into the TXR_RXR register without overwriting the previous data. If the TEIE bit is set then the TXIF flag will generate an interrupt.

During a data transmission, a write instruction to the TXR_RXR register will place the data into the TXR_RXR register, which will be copied to the shift register at the end of the present transmission. When there is no data transmission in progress, a write instruction to the TXR_RXR register will place the data directly into the shift register, resulting in the commencement of data transmission, and the TXIF bit being immediately set. When a frame transmission is complete, which happens after stop bits are sent or after the break frame, the TIDLE bit will be set. To clear the TIDLE bit the following software sequence is used:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register write execution

Note that both the TXIF and TIDLE bits are cleared by the same software sequence.

Transmitting Break

If the TXBRK bit is set and the state keeps for a time greater than $(BRD+1) \times t_{th}$ while TIDLE=1, then break characters will be sent on the next transmission. Break character transmission consists of a start bit, followed by $13 \times N$ '0' bits and stop bits, where $N=1, 2, \text{etc.}$ If a break character is to be transmitted then the TXBRK bit must be first set by the application program, and then cleared to generate the stop bits. Transmitting a break character will not generate a transmit interrupt. Note that a break condition length is at least 13 bits long. If the TXBRK bit is continually kept at a logic high level then the transmitter circuitry will transmit continuous break characters. After the application program has cleared the TXBRK bit, the transmitter will finish transmitting the last break character and subsequently send out two stop bits. The automatic logic highs at the end of the last break character will ensure that the start bit of the next frame is recognized.

UART Receiver

The UART is capable of receiving word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits. If the BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits with the MSB being stored in the RX8 bit of the UCR1 register. At the receiver core lies the Receive Serial Shift Register, commonly known as the RSR. The data which is received on the RX/TX external input pin is sent to the data recovery block. The data recovery block operating speed is 16 times that of the baud rate, while the main receive serial shifter operates at the baud rate. After the RX/TX pin is sampled for the stop bit, the received data in RSR is transferred to the receive data register, if the register is empty. The data which is received on the external RX/TX input pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine the logic level that has been placed onto the RX/TX pin. It should be noted that the RSR register, unlike many other registers,

is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations.

Receiving Data

When the UART receiver is receiving data, the data is serially shifted in on the external RX/TX input pin, LSB first. In the read mode, the TXR_RXR register forms a buffer between the internal bus and the receiver shift register. The TXR_RXR register is a four byte deep FIFO data buffer, where four bytes can be held in the FIFO while a fifth byte can continue to be received. Note that the application program must ensure that the data is read from TXR_RXR before the fifth byte has been completely shifted in, otherwise this fifth byte will be discarded and an overrun error OERR will be subsequently indicated. For continuous multi-byte data transmission, it is strongly recommended that the receiver uses two stop bits to avoid a receiving error caused by the accumulated error of the receiver baud rate frequency.

The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of BNO, PRT1~PRT0, PREN and STOPS bits to define the word length and parity type and number of stop bits.
- Setup the BRDH and BRDL registers and the UMOD2~UMOD0 bits to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the RXEN bit to ensure that the RX/TX pin is used as a UART receiver pin.

At this point the receiver will be enabled which will begin to look for a start bit.

When a character is received the following sequence of events will occur:

- The RXIF bit in the USR register will be set when the TXR_RXR register has data available, the number of the available data bytes can be checked by polling the RxCNT register content.
- When the contents of the shift register have been transferred to the TXR_RXR register and Receiver FIFO trigger level is reached if the RIE bit is set, then an interrupt will be generated.
- If during reception, a frame error, noise error, parity error, or an overrun error has been detected, then the error flags can be set.

The RXIF bit can be cleared using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register read execution

Receiving Break

Any break character received by the UART will be managed as a framing error. The receiver will count and expect a certain number of bit times as specified by the values programmed into the BNO plus one or two stop bits. If the break is much longer than 13 bit times, the reception will be considered as complete after the number of bit times specified by BNO plus one or two stop bits. The RXIF bit is set, FERR is set, zeros are loaded into the receive data register, interrupts are generated if appropriate and the RIDLE bit is set. A break is regarded as a character that contains only zeros with the FERR flag set. If a long break signal has been detected, the receiver will regard it as a data frame including a start bit, data bits and the invalid stop bit and the FERR flag will be set. The receiver must wait for a valid stop bit before looking for the next start bit. The receiver will not make the assumption that the break condition on the line is the next start bit. The break character will be loaded into the buffer and no further data will be received until one or two stop bits are received. It should be noted that the RIDLE read only flag will go high when the stop bits have not yet been received. The reception of a break character on the UART registers will result in the following:

- The framing error flag, FERR, will be set.
- The receive data register, TXR_RXR, will be cleared.
- The OERR, NF, PERR, RIDLE or RXIF flags will possibly be set.

Idle Status

When the receiver is reading data, which means it will be in between the detection of a start bit and the reading of a stop bit, the receiver status flag in the USR register, otherwise known as the RIDLE flag, will have a zero value. In between the reception of a stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE flag will have a high value, which indicates the receiver is in an idle condition.

Receiver Interrupt

The read only receive interrupt flag RXIF in the USR register is set by an edge generated by the receiver. An interrupt is generated if RIE=1, when a word is transferred from the Receive Shift Register, RSR, to the Receive Data Register, TXR_RXR. An overrun error can also generate an interrupt if RIE=1.

When a subroutine will be called with an execution time longer than the time for UART to receive five data bytes, if the UART received data could not be read in time during the subroutine execution, clear the RXEN bit to zero in advance to suspend data reception. If the UART interrupt could not be served in time to process the overrun error during the subroutine execution, ensure that both EMI and RXEN bits are disabled during this period, and then enable EMI and RXEN again after the subroutine execution has been completed to continue the UART data reception.

Managing Receiver Errors

Several types of reception errors can occur within the UART module, the following section describes the various types and how they are managed by the UART.

Overrun Error – OERR

The TXR_RXR register is composed of a four byte deep FIFO data buffer, where four bytes can be held in the FIFO register, while a fifth byte can continue to be received. Before this fifth byte has been entirely shifted in, the data should be read from the TXR_RXR register. If this is not done, the overrun error flag OERR will be consequently indicated.

In the event of an overrun error occurring, the following will happen:

- The OERR flag in the USR register will be set.
- The TXR_RXR contents will not be lost.
- The shift register will be overwritten.
- An interrupt will be generated if the RIE bit is set.

When the OERR flag is set to “1”, it is necessary to read five data bytes from the four-byte deep receiver FIFO and the shift register immediately to avoid unexpected errors, such as the UART is unable to receive data. If such an error occurs, clear the RXEN bit to “0” then set it to “1” again to continue data reception.

The OERR flag can be cleared by an access to the USR register followed by a read to the TXR_RXR register.

Noise Error – NF

Over-sampling is used for data recovery to identify valid incoming data and noise. If noise is detected within a frame the following will occur:

- The read only noise flag, NF, in the USR register will be set on the rising edge of the RXIF bit.
- Data will be transferred from the Shift register to the TXR_RXR register.
- No interrupt will be generated. However this bit rises at the same time as the RXIF bit which itself generates an interrupt.

Note that the NF flag is reset by a USR register read operation followed by a TXR_RXR register read operation.

Framing Error – FERR

The read only framing error flag, FERR, in the USR register, is set if a zero is detected instead of stop bits. If two stop bits are selected, both stop bits must be high; otherwise the FERR flag will be set. The FERR flag and the received data will be recorded in the USR and TXR_RXR registers respectively, and the flag is cleared in any reset.

Parity Error – PERR

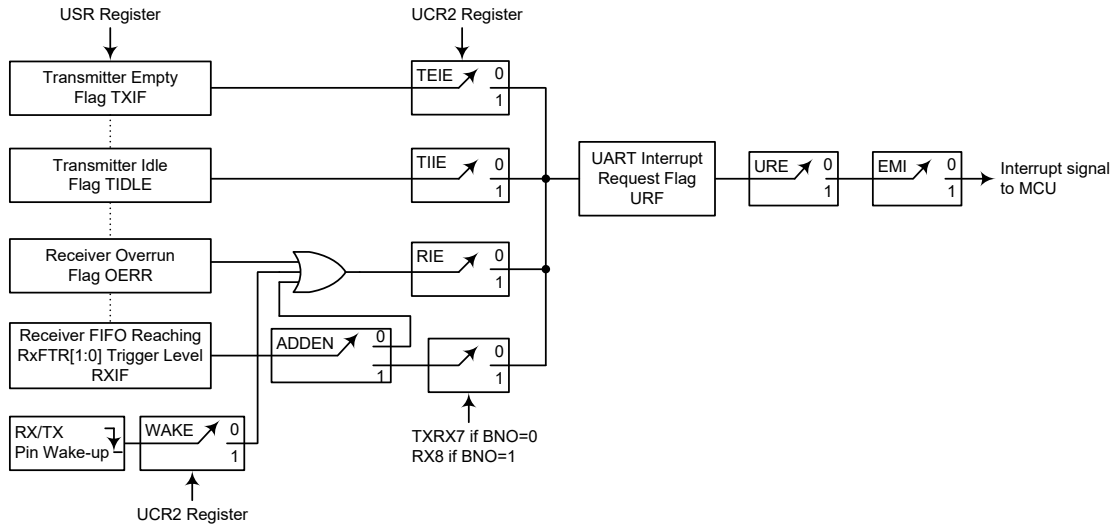
The read only parity error flag, PERR, in the USR register, is set if the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is only applicable if the parity is enabled, PREN=1, and if the parity type, odd, even, mark or space, is selected. The read only PERR flag and the received data will be recorded in the USR and TXR_RXR registers respectively. It is cleared on any reset, it should be noted that the flags, FERR and PERR, in the USR register should first be read by the application program before reading the data word.

UART Interrupt Structure

Several individual UART conditions can generate a UART interrupt. When these conditions exist, a low pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver reaching FIFO trigger level, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX/TX pin wake-up. When any of these conditions are created, if the global interrupt enable bit and its corresponding interrupt control bit are enabled and the stack is not full, the program will jump to its corresponding interrupt vector where it can be serviced before returning to the main program. Four of these conditions have the corresponding USR register flags which will generate a UART interrupt if its associated interrupt enable control bit in the UCR2 register is set. The two transmitter interrupt conditions have their own corresponding enable control bits, while the two receiver interrupt conditions have a shared enable control bit. These enable bits can be used to mask out individual UART interrupt sources.

The address detect condition, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt when an address detect condition occurs if its function is enabled by setting the ADDEN bit in the UCR2 register. An RX/TX pin wake-up, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt if the UART clock (f_{H}) source is switched off and the WAKE and RIE bits in the UCR2 register are set when a falling edge on the RX/TX pin occurs.

Note that the USR register flags are read only and cannot be cleared or set by the application program, neither will they be cleared when the program jumps to the corresponding interrupt servicing routine, as is the case for some of the other interrupts. The flags will be cleared automatically when certain actions are taken by the UART, the details of which are given in the UART register section. The overall UART interrupt can be disabled or enabled by the related interrupt enable control bits in the interrupt control registers of the microcontroller to decide whether the interrupt requested by the UART module is masked out or allowed.



UART Interrupt Structure

Address Detect Mode

Setting the Address Detect Mode bit, ADDEN, in the UCR2 register, enables this special mode. If this bit is enabled then an additional qualifier will be placed on the generation of a Receiver Data Available interrupt, which is requested by the RXIF flag. If the ADDEN bit is enabled, then when data is available, an interrupt will only be generated, if the highest received bit has a high value. Note that the URE and EMI interrupt enable bits must also be enabled for correct interrupt generation. This highest address bit is the 9th bit if BNO=1 or the 8th bit if BNO=0. If this bit is high, then the received word will be defined as an address rather than data. A Data Available interrupt will be generated every time the last bit of the received word is set. If the ADDEN bit is not enabled, then a Receiver Data Available interrupt will be generated each time the RXIF flag is set, irrespective of the data last bit status. The address detect mode and parity enable are mutually exclusive functions. Therefore if the address detect mode is enabled, then to ensure correct operation, the parity function should be disabled by resetting the parity enable bit PREN to zero.

ADDEN	9th Bit if BNO=1 8th Bit if BNO=0	UART Interrupt Generated
0	0	√
	1	√
1	0	×
	1	√

ADDEN Bit Function

UART Power Down and Wake-up

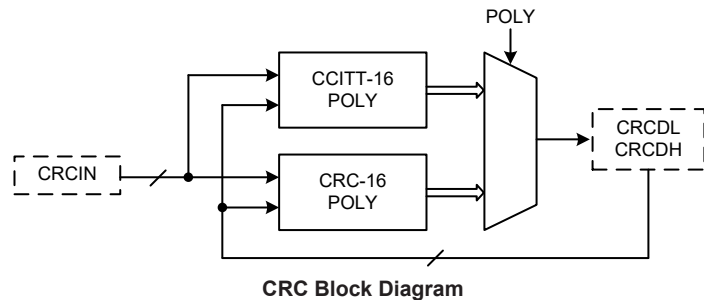
When the UART clock (f_{H}) is off, the UART will cease to function, all clock sources to the module are shutdown. If the UART clock (f_{H}) is off while a transmission is still in progress, then the transmission will be paused until the UART clock source derived from the microcontroller is activated. In a similar way, if the MCU enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode while receiving data, then the reception of data will likewise be paused. When the MCU enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode, note that the USR, UCR1, UCR2, UCR3, UFCR, RxCNT, TXR_RXR as well as the BRDH and BRDL registers will not be affected. It is recommended to make sure first that the UART data transmission or reception has been finished before the microcontroller enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode.

The UART function contains a receiver RX/TX pin wake-up function, which is enabled or disabled by the WAKE bit in the UCR2 register. If this bit, along with the UART enable bit, UARTEN, the receiver enable bit, RXEN and the receiver interrupt bit, RIE, are all set when the UART clock (f_{H}) is off, then a falling edge on the RX/TX pin will trigger an RX/TX pin wake-up UART interrupt. Note that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up, before normal microcontroller operation resumes, any data received during this time on the RX/TX pin will be ignored.

For a UART wake-up interrupt to occur, in addition to the bits for the wake-up being set, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and the UART interrupt enable bit, URE, must be set. If the EMI and URE bits are not set then only a wake up event will occur and no interrupt will be generated. Note also that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up before normal microcontroller resumes, the UART interrupt will not be generated until after this time has elapsed.

Cyclic Redundancy Check – CRC

The Cyclic Redundancy Check, CRC, calculation unit is an error detection technique test algorithm and uses to verify data transmission or storage data correctness. A CRC calculation takes a data stream or a block of data as input and generates a 16-bit output remainder. Ordinarily, a data stream is suffixed by a CRC code and used as a checksum when being sent or stored. Therefore, the received or restored data stream is calculated by the same generator polynomial as described in the following section.



CRC Registers

The CRC generator contains an 8-bit CRC data input register, CRCIN, and a CRC checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL. The CRCIN register is used to input new data and the CRCDH and CRCDL registers are used to hold the previous CRC calculation result. A CRC control register, CRCCR, is used to select which CRC generating polynomial is used.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CRCCR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	POLY
CRCIN	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CRCDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CRCDH	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

CRC Register List

• **CRCCR Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	POLY
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0

Bit 7~1 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 0 **POLY**: 16-bit CRC generating polynomial selection
 0: CRC-CCITT: $X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$
 1: CRC-16: $X^{16} + X^{15} + X^2 + 1$

• **CRCIN Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: CRC input data register

• **CRCDL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: 16-bit CRC checksum low byte data register

• **CRCDH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: 16-bit CRC checksum high byte data register

CRC Operation

The CRC generator provides the 16-bit CRC result calculation based on the CRC16 and CCITT CRC16 polynomials. In this CRC generator, there are only these two polynomials available for the numeric values calculation. It cannot support the 16-bit CRC calculations based on any other polynomials.

The following two expressions can be used for the CRC generating polynomial which is determined using the POLY bit in the CRC control register, CRCCR. The CRC calculation result is called as the CRC checksum, CRCSUM, and stored in the CRC checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL.

- CRC-CCITT: $X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$.
- CRC-16: $X^{16} + X^{15} + X^2 + 1$.

CRC Computation

Each write operation to the CRCIN register creates a combination of the previous CRC value stored in the CRCDH and CRCDL registers and the new data input. The CRC unit calculates the CRC data register value is based on byte by byte. It will take one MCU instruction cycle to calculate the CRC checksum.

CRC Calculation Procedures:

1. Clear the checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL.
2. Execute an “Exclusive OR” operation with the 8-bit input data byte and the 16-bit CRCSUM high byte. The result is called the temporary CRCSUM.
3. Shift the temporary CRCSUM value left by one bit and move a “0” into the LSB.
4. Check the shifted temporary CRCSUM value after procedure 3.

If the MSB is 0, then this shifted temporary CRCSUM will be considered as a new temporary CRCSUM.

Otherwise, execute an “Exclusive OR” operation with the shifted temporary CRCSUM in procedure 3 and a data “8005H”. Then the operation result will be regarded as the new temporary CRCSUM.

Note that the data to be perform an “Exclusive OR” operation is “8005H” for the CRC-16 polynomial while for the CRC-CCITT polynomial the data is “1021H”.

5. Repeat the procedure 3 ~ procedure 4 until all bits of the input data byte are completely calculated.
6. Repeat the procedure 2 ~ procedure 5 until all of the input data bytes are completely calculated. Then, the latest calculated result is the final CRC checksum, CRCSUM.

CRC Calculation Examples:

- Write 1 byte input data into the CRCIN register and the corresponding CRC checksum are individually calculated as the following table shown.

CRC Data Input / CRC Polynomial	00H	01H	02H	03H	04H	05H	06H	07H
CRC-CCITT ($X^{16}+X^{12}+X^5+1$)	0000H	1021H	2042H	3063H	4084H	50A5H	60C6H	70E7H
CRC-16 ($X^{16}+X^{15}+X^2+1$)	0000H	8005H	800FH	000AH	801BH	001EH	0014H	8011H

Note: The initial value of the CRC checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL, is zero before each CRC input data is written into the CRCIN register.

- Write 4 bytes input data into the CRCIN register sequentially and the CRC checksum are sequentially listed in the following table.

CRC Data Input / CRC Polynomial	CRCIN = 78H → 56H → 34H → 12H
CRC-CCITT ($X^{16}+X^{12}+X^5+1$)	(CRCDH, CRCDL) = FF9FH → BBC3H → A367H → D0FAH
CRC-16 ($X^{16}+X^{15}+X^2+1$)	(CRCDH, CRCDL) = 0110h → 91F1h → F2DEh → 5C43h

Note: The initial value of the CRC checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL, is zero before the sequential CRC data input operation.

Program Memory CRC Checksum Calculation Example:

1. Clear the checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL.
2. Select the CRC-CCITT or CRC-16 polynomial as the generating polynomial using the POLY bit in the CRCCR register.
3. Execute the table read instruction to read the program memory data value.
4. Write the table data low byte into the CRCIN register and execute the CRC calculation with the current CRCSUM value. Then a new CRCSUM result will be obtained and stored in the CRC checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL.
5. Write the table data high byte into the CRCIN register and execute the CRC calculation with the current CRCSUM value. Then a new CRCSUM result will be obtained and stored in the CRC checksum register pair, CRCDH and CRCDL.
6. Repeat the procedure 3 ~ procedure 5 to read the next program memory data value and execute the CRC calculation until all program memory data are read followed by the sequential CRC calculation. Then the value in the CRC checksum register pair is the final CRC calculation result.

Low Voltage Detector – LVD

The device has a Low Voltage Detector function, also known as LVD. This enabled the device to monitor the power supply voltage, V_{DD} , or the LVDIN pin input voltage, and provide a warning signal should it fall below a certain level. This function may be especially useful in battery applications where the supply voltage will gradually reduce as the battery ages, as it allows an early warning battery low signal to be generated. The Low Voltage Detector also has the capability of generating an interrupt signal.

LVD Register

The Low Voltage Detector function is controlled using a single register with the name LVDC. Three bits in this register, V_{LV2} ~ V_{LV0} , are used to select one of eight fixed voltages below which a low voltage condition will be determined. A low voltage condition is indicated when the LVDO bit is set. If the LVDO bit is low, this indicates that the V_{DD} voltage or the LVDIN pin input voltage is above the preset low voltage value. The LVDEN bit is used to control the overall on/off function of the low voltage detector. Setting the bit high will enable the low voltage detector. Clearing the bit to zero will switch off the internal low voltage detector circuits. As the low voltage detector will consume a certain amount of power, it may be desirable to switch off the circuit when not in use, an important consideration in power sensitive battery powered applications.

• LVDC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	LVDO	LVDEN	VBGEN	VLVD2	VLVD1	VLVD0
R/W	—	—	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 5 **LVDO**: LVD output flag
 0: No Low Voltage Detected
 1: Low Voltage Detected

Bit 4 **LVDEN**: Low voltage detector enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Bit 3 **VBGEN**: Bandgap voltage output enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

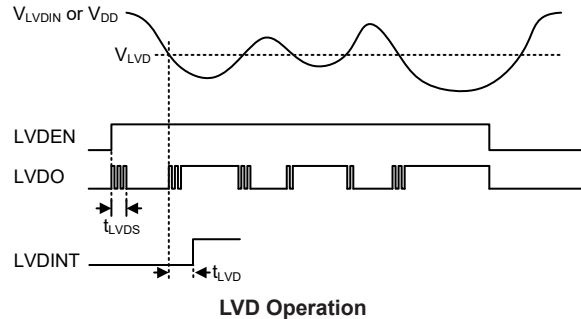
Note that the Bandgap circuit is enabled when the LVD or LVR function is enabled or when the VBGEN bit is set to 1.

Bit 2~0 **VLVD2~VLVD0**: LVD voltage selection
 000: $V_{LVDIN} \leq 1.23V$
 001: 2.2V
 010: 2.4V
 011: 2.7V
 100: 3.0V
 101: 3.3V
 110: 3.6V
 111: 4.0V

When the VLVD2~VLVD0 bits are set to 000B, the LVD function will be implemented by comparing the LVDIN pin input voltage with the LVD reference voltage of 1.23V. When the VLVD2~VLVD0 bits are set to any other value except 000B, the LVD function will operate by comparing the V_{DD} voltage level with the LVD reference voltage with a specific voltage value which is generated by the internal LVD circuit.

LVD Operation

The Low Voltage Detector function operates by comparing the power supply voltage, V_{DD} , or the LVDIN pin input voltage, with a pre-specified voltage level stored in the LVDC register. This has a range of between 1.23V and 4.0V. When the power supply voltage, V_{DD} , or the LVDIN pin input voltage, falls below this pre-determined value, the LVDO bit will be set high indicating a low power supply voltage condition. When the device enters the SLEEP mode, the low voltage detector will be automatically disabled even if the LVDEN bit is set high. After enabling the Low Voltage Detector, a time delay t_{LVDS} should be allowed for the circuitry to stabilise before reading the LVDO bit. Note also that as the V_{DD} or the LVDIN pin input voltage may rise and fall rather slowly, at the voltage nears that of V_{LVD} , there may be multiple bit LVDO transitions.



The Low Voltage Detector also has its own interrupt which is contained within one of the Multi-function interrupts, providing an alternative means of low voltage detection, in addition to polling the LVDO bit. The interrupt will only be generated after a delay of t_{LVD} after the LVDO bit has been set high by a low voltage condition. In this case, the LVF interrupt request flag will be set, causing an interrupt to be generated if V_{DD} or the LVDIN pin input voltage falls below the preset LVD voltage. This will cause the device to wake up from the IDLE Mode, however if the Low Voltage Detector wake-up function is not required then the LVF flag should be first set high before the device enters the IDLE Mode.

Interrupts

Interrupts are an important part of any microcontroller system. When an external event or an internal function such as a Timer Module or an A/D converter requires microcontroller attention, their corresponding interrupt will enforce a temporary suspension of the main program allowing the microcontroller to direct attention to their respective needs. The device contains several external interrupt and internal interrupt functions. The external interrupts are generated by the action of the external INT0~INT1 pins, while the internal interrupts are generated by various internal functions such as the TMs, Time Bases, LVD, EEPROM, SIM, UART and the A/D converter, etc.

Interrupt Registers

Overall interrupt control, which basically means the setting of request flags when certain microcontroller conditions occur and the setting of interrupt enable bits by the application program, is controlled by a series of registers, located in the Special Purpose Data Memory, as shown in the accompanying table. The registers fall into three categories. The first is the INTC0~INTC2 registers which setup the primary interrupts, the second is the MFI0~MFI1 registers which setup the Multi-function interrupts. Finally there is an INTEG register to setup the external interrupt trigger edge type.

Each register contains a number of enable bits to enable or disable individual registers as well as interrupt flags to indicate the presence of an interrupt request. The naming convention of these follows a specific pattern. First is listed an abbreviated interrupt type, then the (optional) number of that interrupt followed by either an “E” for enable/disable bit or “F” for request flag.

Function	Enable Bit	Request Flag	Notes
Global	EMI	—	—
INTn Pin	INTnE	INTnF	n=0~1
A/D Converter	ADE	ADF	—
Multi-function	MFnE	MFnF	n=0~1
CTM	CTMPE	CTMPF	—
	CTMAE	CTMAF	—
PTM	PTMPE	PTMPF	—
	PTMAE	PTMAF	—
LVD	LVE	LVF	—
EEPROM erase or write operation	DEE	DEF	—
Time Base	TBnE	TBnF	n=0~1
SIM	SIME	SIMF	—
UART	URE	URF	—

Interrupt Register Bit Naming Conventions

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
INTEG	—	—	—	—	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
INTC0	—	ADF	INT1F	INT0F	ADE	INT1E	INT0E	EMI
INTC1	TB1F	TB0F	MF1F	MF0F	TB1E	TB0E	MF1E	MF0E
INTC2	—	—	URF	SIMF	—	—	URE	SIME
MF10	PTMAF	PTMPF	CTMAF	CTMPF	PTMAE	PTMPE	CTMAE	CTMPE
MF11	—	—	DEF	LVF	—	—	DEE	LVE

Interrupt Register List

• **INTEG Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3~2 **INT1S1~INT1S0**: Interrupt edge control for INT1 pin
 00: Disable
 01: Rising edge
 10: Falling edge
 11: Rising and falling edges

Bit 1~0 **INT0S1~INT0S0**: Interrupt edge control for INT0 pin
 00: Disable
 01: Rising edge
 10: Falling edge
 11: Rising and falling edges

• INTC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	ADF	INT1F	INT0F	ADE	INT1E	INT0E	EMI
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 6 **ADF**: A/D Converter interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **INT1F**: INT1 interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **INT0F**: INT0 interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3 **ADE**: A/D Converter interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 2 **INT1E**: INT1 interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 1 **INT0E**: INT0 interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 0 **EMI**: Global interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

• INTC1 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TB1F	TB0F	MF1F	MF0F	TB1E	TB0E	MF1E	MF0E
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **TB1F**: Time Base 1 request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 6 **TB0F**: Time Base 0 request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **MF1F**: Multi-function 1 interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **MF0F**: Multi-function 0 interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3 **TB1E**: Time Base 1 interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 2 **TB0E**: Time Base 0 interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

- Bit 1 **MF1E**: Multi-function 1 interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 0 **MF0E**: Multi-function 0 interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

• **INTC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	URF	SIMF	—	—	URE	SIME
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

- Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5 **URF**: UART transfer interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **SIMF**: SIM interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 1 **URE**: UART transfer interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 0 **SIME**: SIM interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

• **MFIO Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTMAF	PTMPF	CTMAF	CTMPF	PTMAE	PTMPE	CTMAE	CTMPE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **PTMAF**: PTM Comparator A match Interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 6 **PTMPF**: PTM Comparator P match Interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **CTMAF**: CTM Comparator A match interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **CTMPF**: CTM Comparator P match interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3 **PTMAE**: PTM Comparator A match Interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 2 **PTMPE**: PTM Comparator P match Interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

- Bit 1 **CTMAE**: CTM Comparator A match interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 0 **CTMPE**: CTM Comparator P match interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

• **MF11 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	DEF	LVF	—	—	DEE	LVE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

- Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5 **DEF**: Data EEPROM interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **LVF**: LVD Interrupt request flag
 0: No request
 1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 1 **DEE**: Data EEPROM interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
- Bit 0 **LVE**: LVD Interrupt control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

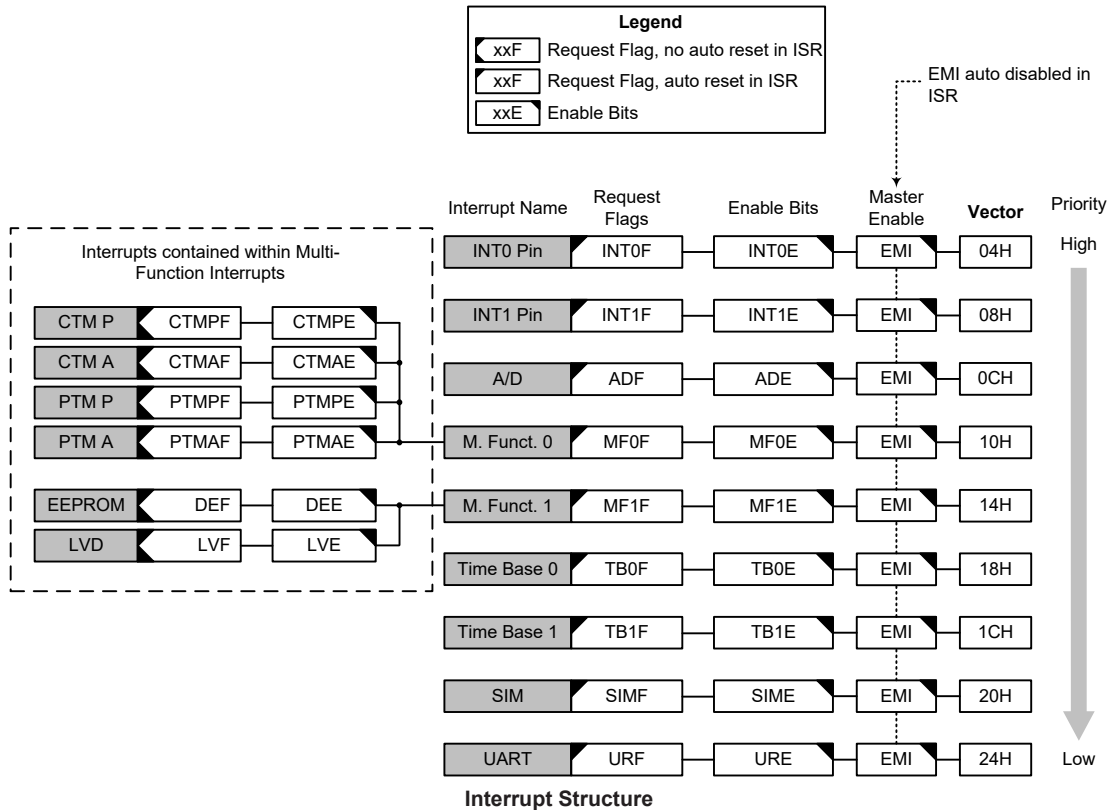
Interrupt Operation

When the conditions for an interrupt event occur, such as a TM Comparator P or Comparator A match or A/D conversion completion etc., the relevant interrupt request flag will be set. Whether the request flag actually generates a program jump to the relevant interrupt vector is determined by the condition of the interrupt enable bit. If the enable bit is set high then the program will jump to its relevant vector; if the enable bit is zero then although the interrupt request flag is set an actual interrupt will not be generated and the program will not jump to the relevant interrupt vector. The global interrupt enable bit, if cleared to zero, will disable all interrupts.

When an interrupt is generated, the Program Counter, which stores the address of the next instruction to be executed, will be transferred onto the stack. The Program Counter will then be loaded with a new address which will be the value of the corresponding interrupt vector. The microcontroller will then fetch its next instruction from this interrupt vector. The instruction at this vector will usually be a “JMP” which will jump to another section of program which is known as the interrupt service routine. Here is located the code to control the appropriate interrupt. The interrupt service routine must be terminated with a “RETI”, which retrieves the original Program Counter address from the stack and allows the microcontroller to continue with normal execution at the point where the interrupt occurred.

The various interrupt enable bits, together with their associated request flags, are shown in the accompanying diagrams with their order of priority. Some interrupt sources have their own individual vector while others share the same multi-function interrupt vector. Once an interrupt subroutine is serviced, all the other interrupts will be blocked, as the global interrupt enable bit, EMI bit will be cleared automatically. This will prevent any further interrupt nesting from occurring. However, if other interrupt requests occur during this interval, although the interrupt will not be immediately serviced, the request flag will still be recorded.

If an interrupt requires immediate servicing while the program is already in another interrupt service routine, the EMI bit should be set after entering the routine, to allow interrupt nesting. If the stack is full, the interrupt request will not be acknowledged, even if the related interrupt is enabled, until the Stack Pointer is decremented. If immediate service is desired, the stack must be prevented from becoming full. In case of simultaneous requests, the accompanying diagram shows the priority that is applied. All of the interrupt request flags when set will wake-up the device if it is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however to prevent a wake-up from occurring the corresponding flag should be set before the device is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode.



External Interrupts

The external interrupts are controlled by signal transitions on the pins INT0~INT1. An external interrupt request will take place when the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, are set, which will occur when a transition, whose type is chosen by the edge select bits, appears on the external interrupt pins. To allow the program to branch to their respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and respective external interrupt enable bits, INT0E~INT1E, must first be set. Additionally the correct interrupt edge type must be selected using the INTEG register to enable the external interrupt function and to choose the trigger edge type. As the external interrupt pins are pin-shared with I/O pins, they can only be configured as external interrupt pins if their external interrupt enable bit in the corresponding interrupt register has been set and the external interrupt pin is selected by the corresponding pin-shared function selection bits. The pin must also be setup as an input by setting the corresponding bit in the port control register. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the correct transition type appears on the external interrupt pins, a subroutine call to the corresponding external interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, will be automatically reset and the

EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. Note that any pull-high resistor selections on the external interrupt pins will remain valid even if the pin is used as an external interrupt input.

The INTEG register is used to select the type of active edge that will trigger the external interrupt. A choice of either rising or falling or both edge types can be chosen to trigger an external interrupt. Note that the INTEG register can also be used to disable the external interrupt function.

A/D Converter Interrupt

The A/D Converter interrupt is controlled by the termination of an A/D conversion process. An A/D Converter Interrupt request will take place when the A/D Converter Interrupt request flag, ADF, is set, which occurs when the A/D conversion process finishes. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and A/D Interrupt enable bit, ADE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the A/D conversion process has ended, a subroutine call to the A/D Converter Interrupt vector will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the A/D Converter Interrupt flag, ADF, will be automatically cleared. The EMI bit will also be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

Multi-function Interrupts

Within these devices there are two Multi-function interrupts. Unlike the other independent interrupts, these interrupts have no independent source, but rather are formed from other existing interrupt sources, namely the TM interrupts, LVD interrupt and EEPROM erase or write operation interrupt.

A Multi-function interrupt request will take place when any of the Multi-function interrupt request flags MFnF are set. The Multi-function interrupt flags will be set when any of their included functions generate an interrupt request flag. When the Multi-function interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, and either one of the interrupts contained within each of Multi-function interrupt occurs, a subroutine call to one of the Multi-function interrupt vectors will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the related Multi-Function request flag will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

However, it must be noted that, although the Multi-function Interrupt request flags will be automatically reset when the interrupt is serviced, the request flags from the original source of the Multi-function interrupts will not be automatically reset and must be manually reset by the application program.

TM Interrupts

The Compact and Periodic TMs have two interrupts, one comes from the comparator A match situation and the other comes from the comparator P match situation. All of the TM interrupts are contained within the Multi-function Interrupts. For all of the TM types there are two interrupt request flags and two enable control bits. A TM interrupt request will take place when any of the TM request flags are set, a situation which occurs when a TM comparator P or A match situation happens.

To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, respective TM Interrupt enable bit, and relevant Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a TM comparator match situation occurs, a subroutine call to the relevant Multi-function Interrupt vector locations, will take place. When the TM interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the related MFnF flag will be automatically cleared. As the TM interrupt request flags will not be automatically cleared, they have to be cleared by the application program.

LVD Interrupt

The Low Voltage Detector Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An LVD Interrupt request will take place when the LVD Interrupt request flag, LVF, is set, which occurs when the Low Voltage Detector function detects a low power supply voltage or a low LVDIN pin input voltage. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, Low Voltage Interrupt enable bit, LVE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a low voltage condition occurs, a subroutine call to the Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the Low Voltage Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the LVF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

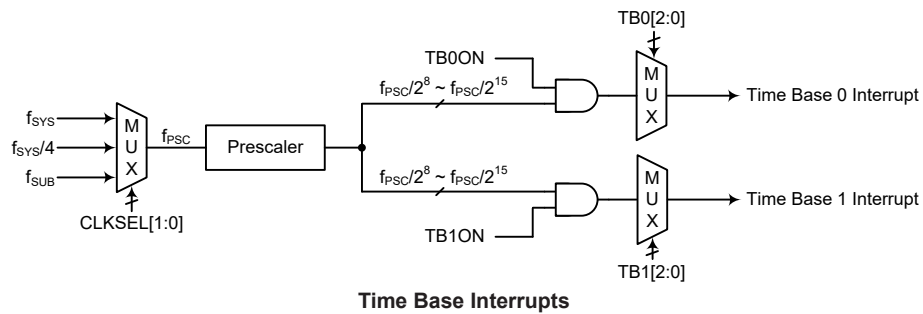
EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An EEPROM Interrupt request will take place when the EEPROM Interrupt request flag, DEF, is set, which occurs when an EEPROM erase or write cycle ends. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, EEPROM Interrupt enable bit, DEE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and an EEPROM erase or write cycle ends, a subroutine call to the respective Multi-function Interrupt vector will take place. When the EEPROM Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be automatically cleared. As the DEF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

Time Base Interrupts

The function of the Time Base Interrupts is to provide regular time signal in the form of an internal interrupt. They are controlled by the overflow signals from their respective timer functions. When these happen their respective interrupt request flag, TB0F or TB1F will be set. To allow the program to branch to their respective interrupt vector addresses, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI and Time Base enable bit, TB0E or TB1E, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the Time Base overflows, a subroutine call to their respective vector locations will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the respective interrupt request flag, TB0F or TB1F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be cleared to disable other interrupts.

The purpose of the Time Base Interrupt is to provide an interrupt signal at fixed time periods. Its clock source, f_{PSC} , originates from the internal clock source f_{SYS} , $f_{SYS}/4$ or f_{SUB} and then passes through a divider, the division ratio of which is selected by programming the appropriate bits in the TB0C and TB1C registers to obtain longer interrupt periods whose value ranges. The clock source which in turn controls the Time Base interrupt period is selected using the CLKSEL1~CLKSEL0 bits in the PSCR register.



• PSCR Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLKSEL1	CLKSEL0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1~0 **CLKSEL1~CLKSEL0**: Prescaler clock source selection
 00: f_{SYS}
 01: $f_{SYS}/4$
 1x: f_{SUB}

• TB0C Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TB0ON	—	—	—	—	TB02	TB01	TB00
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TB0ON**: Time Base 0 Control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 2~0 **TB02~TB00**: Select Time Base 0 Time-out Period
 000: $2^8/f_{PSC}$
 001: $2^9/f_{PSC}$
 010: $2^{10}/f_{PSC}$
 011: $2^{11}/f_{PSC}$
 100: $2^{12}/f_{PSC}$
 101: $2^{13}/f_{PSC}$
 110: $2^{14}/f_{PSC}$
 111: $2^{15}/f_{PSC}$

• TB1C Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TB1ON	—	—	—	—	TB12	TB11	TB10
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TB1ON**: Time Base 1 Control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 2~0 **TB12~TB10**: Select Time Base 1 Time-out Period
 000: $2^8/f_{PSC}$
 001: $2^9/f_{PSC}$
 010: $2^{10}/f_{PSC}$
 011: $2^{11}/f_{PSC}$
 100: $2^{12}/f_{PSC}$
 101: $2^{13}/f_{PSC}$
 110: $2^{14}/f_{PSC}$
 111: $2^{15}/f_{PSC}$

Serial Interface Module Interrupt

The Serial Interface Module Interrupt is also known as the SIM interrupt. A SIM Interrupt request will take place when the SIM Interrupt request flag, SIMF, is set, which occurs when a byte of data has been received or transmitted by the SIM interface, an I²C slave address match or I²C bus time-out occurs. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and SIM Interrupt enable bit, SIME, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and any of the above described situations occurs, a subroutine call to the corresponding SIM Interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the SIMF flag will be automatically cleared and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

UART Interrupt

The UART Interrupt is controlled by several UART transfer conditions. When one of these conditions occurs, an interrupt pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver reaching FIFO trigger level, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX/TX pin wake-up. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and UART Interrupt enable bit, URE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and any of the conditions described above occurs, a subroutine call to the corresponding UART Interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the UART Interrupt flag, URF, will be automatically cleared. The EMI bit will also be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, the USR register flags will only be cleared when certain actions are taken by the UART, the details of which are given in the UART section.

Interrupt Wake-up Function

Each of the interrupt functions has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. A wake-up is generated when an interrupt request flag changes from low to high and is independent of whether the interrupt is enabled or not. Therefore, even though the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode and its system oscillator stopped, situations such as external edge transitions on the external interrupt pin may cause their respective interrupt flag to be set high and consequently generate an interrupt. Care must therefore be taken if spurious wake-up situations are to be avoided. If an interrupt wake-up function is to be disabled then the corresponding interrupt request flag should be set high before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. The interrupt enable bits have no effect on the interrupt wake-up function.

Programming Considerations

By disabling the relevant interrupt enable bits, a requested interrupt can be prevented from being serviced, however, once an interrupt request flag is set, it will remain in this condition in the interrupt register until the corresponding interrupt is serviced or until the request flag is cleared by the application program.

Where a certain interrupt is contained within a Multi-function interrupt, then when the interrupt service routine is executed, as only the Multi-function interrupt request flags, MF_nF, will be automatically cleared, the individual request flag for the function needs to be cleared by the application program.

It is recommended that programs do not use the “CALL” instruction within the interrupt service subroutine. Interrupts often occur in an unpredictable manner or need to be serviced immediately. If only one stack is left and the interrupt is not well controlled, the original control sequence will be damaged once a CALL subroutine is executed in the interrupt subroutine.

Every interrupt has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when it is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake up being generated when the interrupt request flag changes from low to high. If it is required to prevent a certain interrupt from waking up the microcontroller then its respective request flag should be first set high before enter SLEEP or IDLE Mode.

As only the Program Counter is pushed onto the stack, then when the interrupt is serviced, if the contents of the accumulator, status register or other registers are altered by the interrupt service program, their contents should be saved to the memory at the beginning of the interrupt service routine.

To return from an interrupt subroutine, either a RET or RETI instruction may be executed. The RETI instruction in addition to executing a return to the main program also automatically sets the EMI bit high to allow further interrupts. The RET instruction however only executes a return to the main program leaving the EMI bit in its present zero state and therefore disabling the execution of further interrupts.

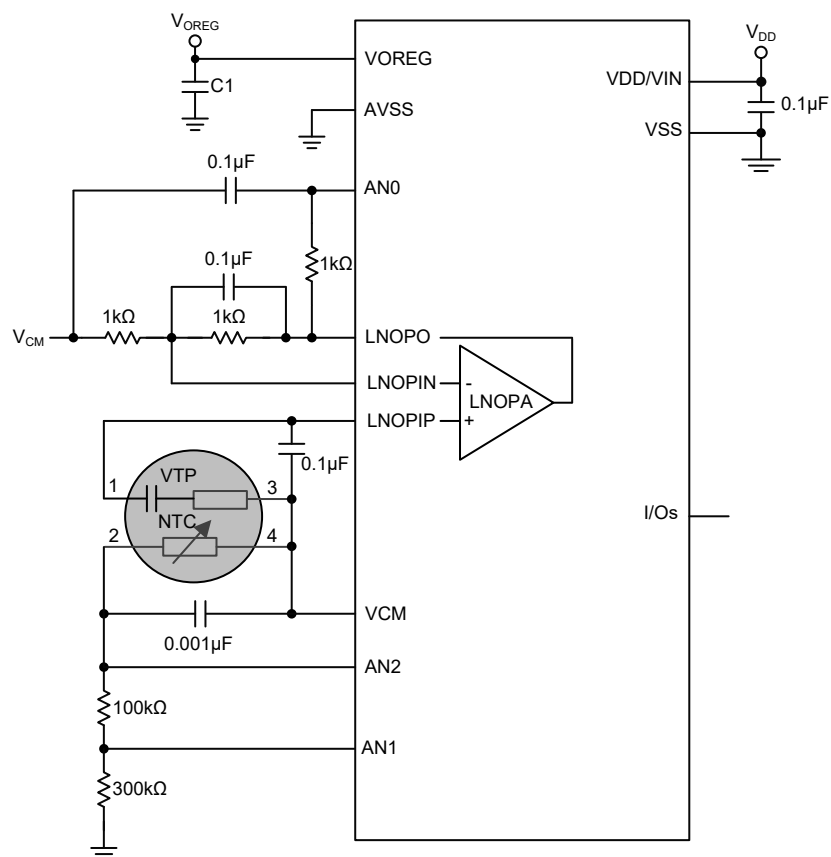
Configuration Options

Configuration options refer to certain options within the MCU that are programmed into the device during the programming process. During the development process, these options are selected using the HT-IDE software development tools. All options must be defined for proper system function, the details of which are shown in the table.

No.	Options
Oscillator Option	
1	HIRC Frequency Selection – f_{HIRC} : 4MHz, 8MHz or 12MHz

Note: When the HIRC has been configured at a frequency shown in this table, the HIRC1 and HIRC0 bits should also be setup to select the same frequency to achieve the HIRC frequency accuracy specified in the A.C. Characteristics.

Application Circuits



Instruction Set

Introduction

Central to the successful operation of any microcontroller is its instruction set, which is a set of program instruction codes that directs the microcontroller to perform certain operations. In the case of Holtek microcontroller, a comprehensive and flexible set of over 60 instructions is provided to enable programmers to implement their application with the minimum of programming overheads.

For easier understanding of the various instruction codes, they have been subdivided into several functional groupings.

Instruction Timing

Most instructions are implemented within one instruction cycle. The exceptions to this are branch, call, or table read instructions where two instruction cycles are required. One instruction cycle is equal to 4 system clock cycles, therefore in the case of an 8MHz system oscillator, most instructions would be implemented within 0.5 μ s and branch or call instructions would be implemented within 1 μ s. Although instructions which require one more cycle to implement are generally limited to the JMP, CALL, RET, RETI and table read instructions, it is important to realize that any other instructions which involve manipulation of the Program Counter Low register or PCL will also take one more cycle to implement. As instructions which change the contents of the PCL will imply a direct jump to that new address, one more cycle will be required. Examples of such instructions would be “CLR PCL” or “MOV PCL, A”. For the case of skip instructions, it must be noted that if the result of the comparison involves a skip operation then this will also take one more cycle, if no skip is involved then only one cycle is required.

Moving and Transferring Data

The transfer of data within the microcontroller program is one of the most frequently used operations. Making use of several kinds of MOV instructions, data can be transferred from registers to the Accumulator and vice-versa as well as being able to move specific immediate data directly into the Accumulator. One of the most important data transfer applications is to receive data from the input ports and transfer data to the output ports.

Arithmetic Operations

The ability to perform certain arithmetic operations and data manipulation is a necessary feature of most microcontroller applications. Within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set are a range of add and subtract instruction mnemonics to enable the necessary arithmetic to be carried out. Care must be taken to ensure correct handling of carry and borrow data when results exceed 255 for addition and less than 0 for subtraction. The increment and decrement instructions such as INC, INCA, DEC and DECA provide a simple means of increasing or decreasing by a value of one of the values in the destination specified.

Logical and Rotate Operation

The standard logical operations such as AND, OR, XOR and CPL all have their own instruction within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set. As with the case of most instructions involving data manipulation, data must pass through the Accumulator which may involve additional programming steps. In all logical data operations, the zero flag may be set if the result of the operation is zero. Another form of logical data manipulation comes from the rotate instructions such as RR, RL, RRC and RLC which provide a simple means of rotating one bit right or left. Different rotate instructions exist depending on program requirements. Rotate instructions are useful for serial port programming applications where data can be rotated from an internal register into the Carry bit from where it can be examined and the necessary serial bit set high or low. Another application which rotate data operations are used is to implement multiplication and division calculations.

Branches and Control Transfer

Program branching takes the form of either jumps to specified locations using the JMP instruction or to a subroutine using the CALL instruction. They differ in the sense that in the case of a subroutine call, the program must return to the instruction immediately when the subroutine has been carried out. This is done by placing a return instruction “RET” in the subroutine which will cause the program to jump back to the address right after the CALL instruction. In the case of a JMP instruction, the program simply jumps to the desired location. There is no requirement to jump back to the original jumping off point as in the case of the CALL instruction. One special and extremely useful set of branch instructions are the conditional branches. Here a decision is first made regarding the condition of a certain data memory or individual bits. Depending upon the conditions, the program will continue with the next instruction or skip over it and jump to the following instruction. These instructions are the key to decision making and branching within the program perhaps determined by the condition of certain input switches or by the condition of internal data bits.

Bit Operations

The ability to provide single bit operations on Data Memory is an extremely flexible feature of all Holtek microcontrollers. This feature is especially useful for output port bit programming where individual bits or port pins can be directly set high or low using either the “SET [m].i” or “CLR [m].i” instructions respectively. The feature removes the need for programmers to first read the 8-bit output port, manipulate the input data to ensure that other bits are not changed and then output the port with the correct new data. This read-modify-write process is taken care of automatically when these bit operation instructions are used.

Table Read Operations

Data storage is normally implemented by using registers. However, when working with large amounts of fixed data, the volume involved often makes it inconvenient to store the fixed data in the Data Memory. To overcome this problem, Holtek microcontrollers allow an area of Program Memory to be setup as a table where data can be directly stored. A set of easy to use instructions provides the means by which this fixed data can be referenced and retrieved from the Program Memory.

Other Operations

In addition to the above functional instructions, a range of other instructions also exist such as the “HALT” instruction for Power-down operations and instructions to control the operation of the Watchdog Timer for reliable program operations under extreme electric or electromagnetic environments. For their relevant operations, refer to the functional related sections.

Instruction Set Summary

The instructions related to the data memory access in the following table can be used when the desired data memory is located in Data Memory sector 0.

Table Conventions

x: Bits immediate data
m: Data Memory address
A: Accumulator
i: 0~7 number of bits
addr: Program memory address

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
ADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADD A,x	Add immediate data to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
SUB A,x	Subtract immediate data from the ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,x	Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
DAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	C
Logic Operation			
AND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
OR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
ANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
ORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
XORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
AND A,x	Logical AND immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
OR A,x	Logical OR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,x	Logical XOR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
CPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
CPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
Increment & Decrement			
INCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
INC [m]	Increment Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
DECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
DEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
Rotate			
RRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	1	None
RR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	1 ^{Note}	None
RRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	1 ^{Note}	C
RLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	1	None
RL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	1 ^{Note}	None
RLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	1 ^{Note}	C

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Data Move			
MOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	1	None
MOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
MOV A,x	Move immediate data to ACC	1	None
Bit Operation			
CLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
SET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
Branch Operation			
JMP addr	Jump unconditionally	2	None
SZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	1 ^{Note}	None
SZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1 ^{Note}	None
SDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1 ^{Note}	None
CALL addr	Subroutine call	2	None
RET	Return from subroutine	2	None
RET A,x	Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC	2	None
RETI	Return from interrupt	2	None
Table Read Operation			
TABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
TABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
ITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
ITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
Miscellaneous			
NOP	No operation	1	None
CLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
SET [m]	Set Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
CLR WDT	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	TO, PDF
SWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
SWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	1	None
HALT	Enter power down mode	1	TO, PDF

Note: 1. For skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then two cycles are required, if no skip takes place only one cycle is required.

2. Any instruction which changes the contents of the PCL will also require 2 cycles for execution.

Extended Instruction Set

The extended instructions are used to support the full range address access for the data memory. When the accessed data memory is located in any data memory sector except sector 0, the extended instruction can be used to directly access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. This can not only reduce the use of Flash memory space but also improve the CPU execution efficiency.

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
LADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LSUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LDAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	C
Logic Operation			
LAND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LOR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LXOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LXORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LCPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LCPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
Increment & Decrement			
LINCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LINC [m]	Increment Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LDECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LDEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
Rotate			
LRR A,[m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	2	None
LRR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	2 ^{Note}	None
LRRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	2 ^{Note}	C
LRLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	2	None
LRL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	2 ^{Note}	None
LRLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	2 ^{Note}	C
Data Move			
LMOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	2	None
LMOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
Bit Operation			
LCLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Branch			
LSZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	2 ^{Note}	None
LSNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2 ^{Note}	None
LSDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2 ^{Note}	None
Table Read			
LTABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
LTABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
LITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
LITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
Miscellaneous			
LCLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSET [m]	Set Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	2	None

- Note: 1. For these extended skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then three cycles are required, if no skip takes place two cycles is required.
2. Any extended instruction which changes the contents of the PCL register will also require three cycles for execution.

Instruction Definition

ADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADD A,x	Add immediate data to ACC
Description	The contents of the Accumulator and the specified immediate data are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + x$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
AND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
AND A,x	Logical AND immediate data to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bit wise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } x$
Affected flag(s)	Z
ANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z

CALL addr	Subroutine call
Description	Unconditionally calls a subroutine at the specified address. The Program Counter then increments by 1 to obtain the address of the next instruction which is then pushed onto the stack. The specified address is then loaded and the program continues execution from this new address. As this instruction requires an additional operation, it is a two cycle instruction.
Operation	Stack \leftarrow Program Counter + 1 Program Counter \leftarrow addr
Affected flag(s)	None
CLR [m]	Clear Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	[m] \leftarrow 00H
Affected flag(s)	None
CLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	[m].i \leftarrow 0
Affected flag(s)	None
CLR WDT	Clear Watchdog Timer
Description	The TO, PDF flags and the WDT are all cleared.
Operation	WDT cleared TO \leftarrow 0 PDF \leftarrow 0
Affected flag(s)	TO, PDF
CPL [m]	Complement Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.
Operation	[m] \leftarrow $\overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
CPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	ACC \leftarrow $\overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
DAA [m]	Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory
Description	Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.
Operation	[m] \leftarrow ACC + 00H or [m] \leftarrow ACC + 06H or [m] \leftarrow ACC + 60H or [m] \leftarrow ACC + 66H
Affected flag(s)	C

DEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
DECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
HALT	Enter power down mode
Description	This instruction stops the program execution and turns off the system clock. The contents of the Data Memory and registers are retained. The WDT and prescaler are cleared. The power down flag PDF is set and the WDT time-out flag TO is cleared.
Operation	$TO \leftarrow 0$ $PDF \leftarrow 1$
Affected flag(s)	TO, PDF
INC [m]	Increment Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
INCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
JMP addr	Jump unconditionally
Description	The contents of the Program Counter are replaced with the specified address. Program execution then continues from this new address. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the new address is loaded, it is a two cycle instruction.
Operation	Program Counter \leftarrow addr
Affected flag(s)	None
MOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$
Affected flag(s)	None
MOV A,x	Move immediate data to ACC
Description	The immediate data specified is loaded into the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow x$
Affected flag(s)	None
MOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC$
Affected flag(s)	None

NOP	No operation
Description	No operation is performed. Execution continues with the next instruction.
Operation	No operation
Affected flag(s)	None
OR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "OR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
OR A,x	Logical OR immediate data to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "OR" x
Affected flag(s)	Z
ORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	[m] ← ACC "OR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
RET	Return from subroutine
Description	The Program Counter is restored from the stack. Program execution continues at the restored address.
Operation	Program Counter ← Stack
Affected flag(s)	None
RET A,x	Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC
Description	The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the Accumulator loaded with the specified immediate data. Program execution continues at the restored address.
Operation	Program Counter ← Stack ACC ← x
Affected flag(s)	None
RETI	Return from interrupt
Description	The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the interrupts are re-enabled by setting the EMI bit. EMI is the master interrupt global enable bit. If an interrupt was pending when the RETI instruction is executed, the pending Interrupt routine will be processed before returning to the main program.
Operation	Program Counter ← Stack EMI ← 1
Affected flag(s)	None
RL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.
Operation	[m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6) [m].0 ← [m].7
Affected flag(s)	None

RLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	None
RLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.
Operation	$[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C
RLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C
RR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
RRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
RRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	C

RRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6) ACC.7 ← C C ← [m].0
Affected flag(s)	C
SBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	ACC ← ACC – [m] – \bar{C}
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SBC A, x	Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry
Description	The immediate data and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	ACC ← ACC – [m] – \bar{C}
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	[m] ← ACC – [m] – \bar{C}
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	[m] ← [m] – 1 Skip if [m]=0
Affected flag(s)	None
SDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	ACC ← [m] – 1 Skip if ACC=0
Affected flag(s)	None

SET [m]	Set Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow FFH$
Affected flag(s)	None
SET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow 1$
Affected flag(s)	None
SIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $ACC=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m].i \neq 0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written back to the specified Data Memory again. If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m] \neq 0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SUB A,x	Subtract immediate data from ACC
Description	The immediate data specified by the code is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - x$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.
Operation	$[m].3 \sim [m].0 \leftrightarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$
Affected flag(s)	None
SWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.3 \sim ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$ $ACC.7 \sim ACC.4 \leftarrow [m].3 \sim [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written back to the specified Data Memory again. If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m].i=0$
Affected flag(s)	None

TABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP and TBHP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
TABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
ITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
ITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
XOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
XORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	[m] ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
XOR A,x	Logical XOR immediate data to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "XOR" x
Affected flag(s)	Z

Extended Instruction Definition

The extended instructions are used to directly access the data stored in any data memory sections.

LADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LAND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LCLR [m]	Clear Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow 00H$
Affected flag(s)	None
LCLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow 0$
Affected flag(s)	None

LCPL [m]	Complement Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow \overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LCPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow \overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LDAA [m]	Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory
Description	Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + 00H$ or $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 06H$ or $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 60H$ or $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 66H$
Affected flag(s)	C
LDEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LDECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LINC [m]	Increment Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LINCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z

LMOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$
Affected flag(s)	None
LMOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC$
Affected flag(s)	None
LOR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "OR" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC \text{ "OR" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LRL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.
Operation	$[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim 6)$ $[m].0 \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim 6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.
Operation	$[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim 6)$ $[m].0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C
LRLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim 6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C

LRR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRRRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $ACC.7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRRRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	C
LRRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $ACC.7 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	C
LSBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \bar{C}$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
LSBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \bar{C}$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$ Skip if $ACC=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSET [m]	Set Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow FFH$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow 1$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $ACC=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m].i \neq 0$
Affected flag(s)	None

LSNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written to the specified Data Memory again. If the content of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if [m] ≠ 0
Affected flag(s)	None
LSUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
LSUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
LSWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.
Operation	$[m].3 \sim [m].0 \leftrightarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.3 \sim ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$ $ACC.7 \sim ACC.4 \leftarrow [m].3 \sim [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written to the specified Data Memory again. If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if [m]=0
Affected flag(s)	None
LSZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$ Skip if [m]=0
Affected flag(s)	None

LSZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if [m].i=0
Affected flag(s)	None
LTABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LTABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LXOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
LXORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	[m] ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z

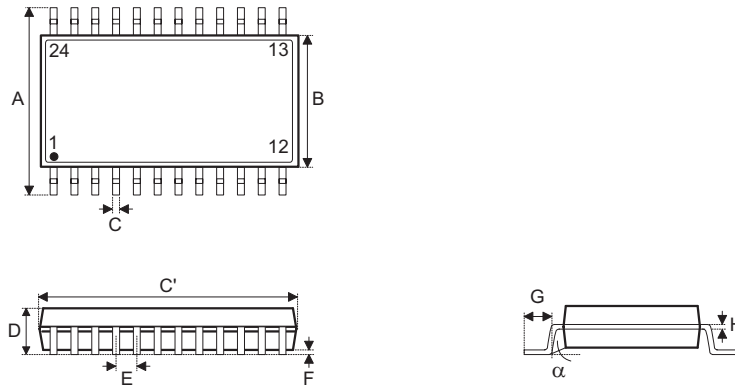
Package Information

Note that the package information provided here is for consultation purposes only. As this information may be updated at regular intervals users are reminded to consult the [Holtek website](#) for the latest version of the [Package/Carton Information](#).

Additional supplementary information with regard to packaging is listed below. Click on the relevant section to be transferred to the relevant website page.

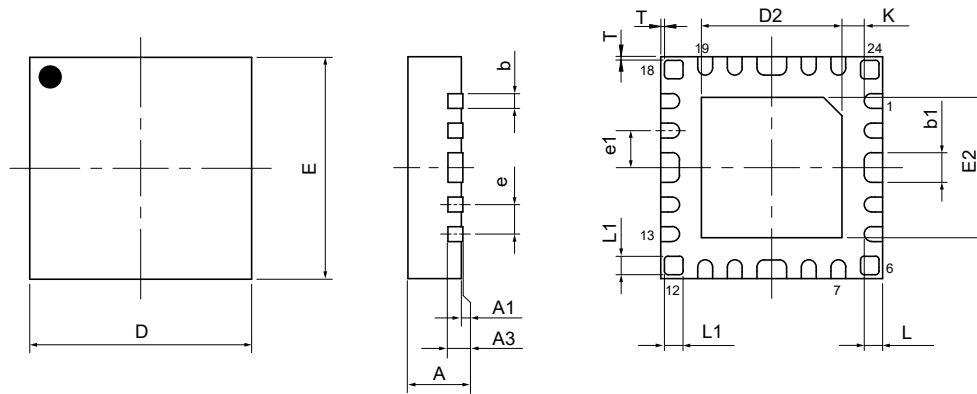
- [Package Information \(include Outline Dimensions, Product Tape and Reel Specifications\)](#)
- [The Operation Instruction of Packing Materials](#)
- [Carton information](#)

24-pin SSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions



Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	0.236 BSC		
B	0.154 BSC		
C	0.008	—	0.012
C'	0.341 BSC		
D	—	—	0.069
E	0.025 BSC		
F	0.004	—	0.010
G	0.016	—	0.050
H	0.004	—	0.010
α	0°	—	8°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	6.00 BSC		
B	3.90 BSC		
C	0.20	—	0.30
C'	8.66 BSC		
D	—	—	1.75
E	0.635 BSC		
F	0.10	—	0.25
G	0.41	—	1.27
H	0.10	—	0.25
α	0°	—	8°

SAW Type 24-pin QFN (3mm×3mm×0.55mm) Outline Dimensions


Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	0.020	0.022	0.024
A1	0.000	0.001	0.002
A3	0.006 REF		
b	0.006	0.008	0.010
b1	0.014	0.016	0.018
D	0.118 BSC		
E	0.118 BSC		
e	0.016 BSC		
e1	0.020 BSC		
D2	0.073	—	0.077
E2	0.073	—	0.077
L	0.006	0.010	0.014
L1	0.008	0.010	0.012
K	0.008	—	—
T	0.000	0.002	0.004

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	0.50	0.55	0.60
A1	0.00	0.02	0.05
A3	0.15 REF		
b	0.15	0.20	0.25
b1	0.35	0.40	0.45
D	3.00 BSC		
E	3.00 BSC		
e	0.40 BSC		
e1	0.50 BSC		
D2	1.85	—	1.95
E2	1.85	—	1.95
L	0.15	0.25	0.35
L1	0.20	0.25	0.30
K	0.20	—	—
T	0.00	0.05	0.10

Copyright© 2024 by HOLTEK SEMICONDUCTOR INC. All Rights Reserved.

The information provided in this document has been produced with reasonable care and attention before publication, however, HOLTEK does not guarantee that the information is completely accurate. The information contained in this publication is provided for reference only and may be superseded by updates. HOLTEK disclaims any expressed, implied or statutory warranties, including but not limited to suitability for commercialization, satisfactory quality, specifications, characteristics, functions, fitness for a particular purpose, and non-infringement of any third-party's rights. HOLTEK disclaims all liability arising from the information and its application. In addition, HOLTEK does not recommend the use of HOLTEK's products where there is a risk of personal hazard due to malfunction or other reasons. HOLTEK hereby declares that it does not authorize the use of these products in life-saving, life-sustaining or safety critical components. Any use of HOLTEK's products in life-saving/sustaining or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold HOLTEK harmless from any damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. The information provided in this document, including but not limited to the content, data, examples, materials, graphs, and trademarks, is the intellectual property of HOLTEK (and its licensors, where applicable) and is protected by copyright law and other intellectual property laws. No license, express or implied, to any intellectual property right, is granted by HOLTEK herein. HOLTEK reserves the right to revise the information described in the document at any time without prior notice. For the latest information, please contact us.